

ENGLISH

الصف السادس الابتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

20
26



6th
PRIMARY
FIRST TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Contents

6

Primary

Part 1

- Punctuation
- Unit 1: Amazing places in Egypt
- Unit 2: Our Nature
- Unit 3: Community Builders
- Review 1



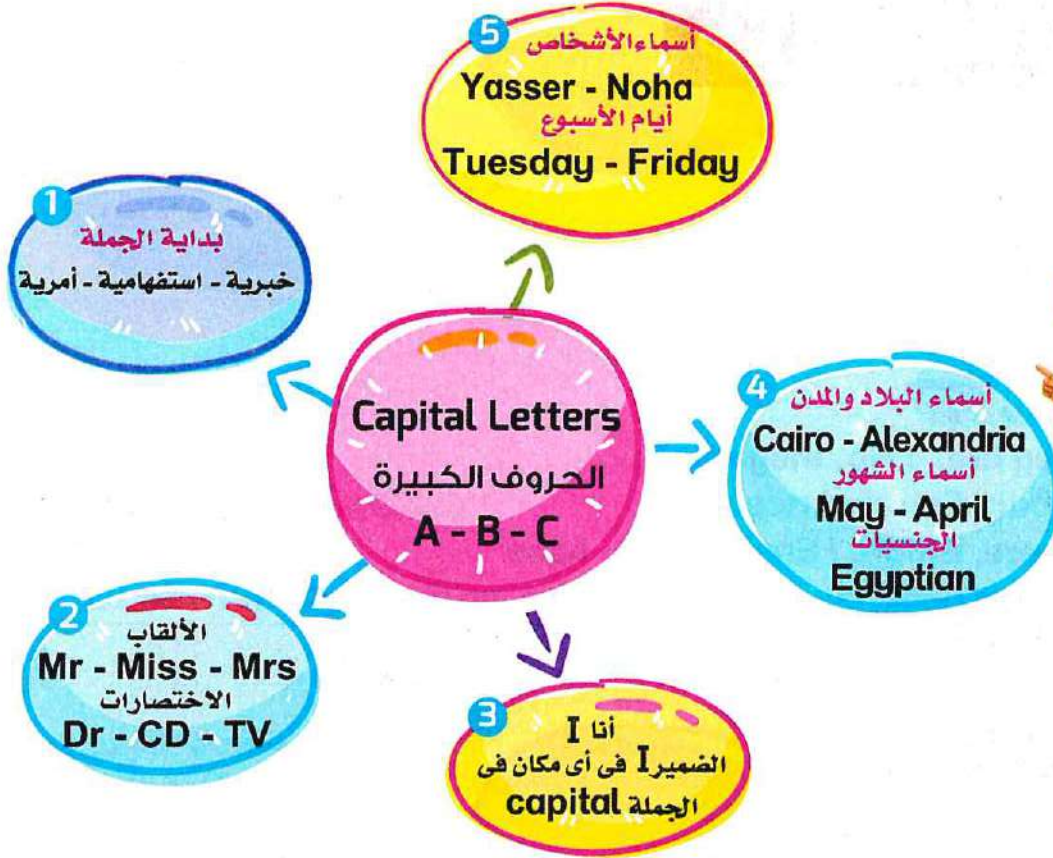
Part 2

- Unit 4: Resources Around Us
- Unit 5: Made In Egypt
- Unit 6: The Water Savers
- Review 2
- Listening materials
- Booklet
- Dictation
- Exercises and Tests
- Final Tests



Punctuation

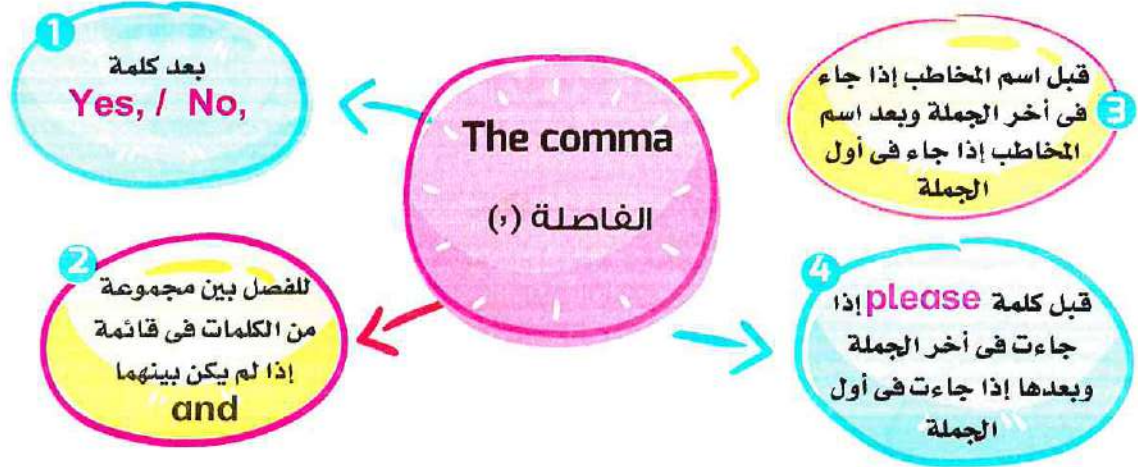
علامات الترقيم



Examples:

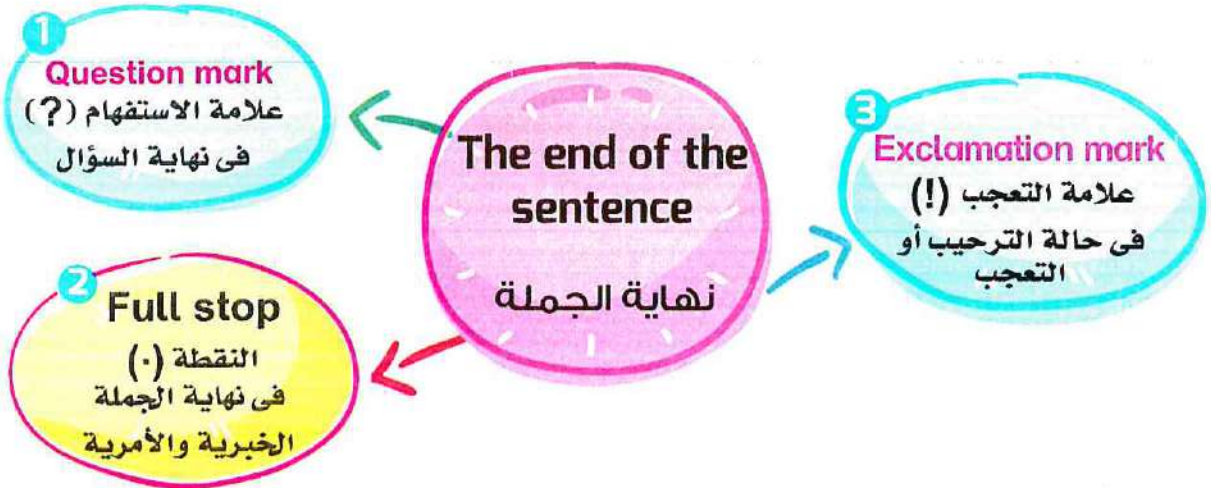
1. **S**ameh is a teacher. (جملة خبرية)
2. **C**lose your book. (جملة أمرية)
3. **W**here's your house? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** want some water. **I**'m thirsty. (الضمير I)
5. We visited **C**airo in **M**arch. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. **M**r Tamer plays tennis on **W**ednesday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)

Punctuation



Examples:

- **Yes**, they are. / **No**, they aren't. (بعد **Yes, / No**)
- I want **fruit**, **fish** and **rice**. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- Come here, **Eman**. / **Eman**, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, **please**. / **Please**, give me this book. (كلمة **Please**)



Examples

1. We are friends. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close the window. (جملة أمرية)
3. How are you, Karim? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Nabil. (علامة تعجب)

Unit 1



Amazing places in Egypt

أماكن مذهلة في مصر

Unit objectives

Listening

- Describe traditions and the life in Egypt.
- Identify activities in different parts in Egypt.
- Describe school routines and favorite activities.

يصف الطالب التقاليد والحياة في مصر.

يحدد الطالب الأنشطة في أماكن مختلفة في مصر.

يصف الطالب الروتين المدرسي والأنشطة المفضلة لديه.

Speaking

- Talk about visiting a traditional place in Egypt.
- Talk about a day at school and your favorite activities.
- Identify and accurately pronounce the phoneme /a/.

يتحدث الطالب عن زيارة مكان تقليدي في مصر.

يتحدث الطالب عن يوم في المدرسة والأنشطة المفضلة لديه.

يتعرف الطالب على الصوت /a/ وينطقه بدقة.

Reading

- Find key information in cultural, personal, and factual texts.

يتعرف الطالب على المعلومات الأساسية في النصوص الثقافية والشخصية والحقائق.

- Answer comprehension questions to show understanding of reading texts.

يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة الفهم ليظهر مدى استيعابه للنصوص المقروءة.

Writing

- Write sentences using the present simple correctly.
- Write an informal email describing a typical day at school.

يكتب الطالب جملًا صحيحة باستخدام زمن المضارع البسيط.

يكتب الطالب بريدًا إلكترونيًا غير رسمي يصف فيه يومًا نموذجيًا في المدرسة.

- Create a poster about your governorate.

يصمم الطالب ملصقًا عن محافظته.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



buy souvenirs

يشترى هدايا تذكارية



make furniture

يصنع أثاث



play music

يعزف موسيقى



take photos

يلتقط صور



walk to a small museum

يمشي إلى متحف صغير



visit ancient sites

يزور الأماكن القديمة

culture

ثقافة

Old Cairo

القاهرة القديمة



Other words

كلمات أخرى

Khan El Khalili

خان الخليلي

ancient

قديم

necklace

عقد (قلادة)

busy

مزدحم

market

سوق

amazing

مدهش

coin

عملة معدنية

smell

رائحة

history

تاريخ

colorful

كثير الألوان

art

فن

exciting

مثير

bracelet

أسورة

wooden

خشبي

lamp

مصباح

gate

بوابة

designs

تصميمات

clothes

ملابس

drum

طبل

tools

أدوات

sounds

أصوات

area

منطقة

Expressions, prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

do many activities

يقوم بأنشطة كثيرة

by hand

يدويًا

walk through

يمشي عبر

smiles for the camera.

يتسم للكاميرا

for a few minutes

لدقائق قليلة

It is fun to

من الممتع ان

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

visit	يزور
play	يعزف
walk	يمشي
watch	يشاهد
bake	يخبز
smile	يتسم
enjoy	يستمتع بـ

Past ماض

visited
played
walked
watched
baked
smiled
enjoyed

Present مضارع

stand	يقف
buy	يشترى
take	يأخذ
make	يصنع
choose	يختار
spend	يقضي

Past ماض

stood
bought
took
made
chose
spent

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 hear / see / watch + V.ing / Inf فعل في المصدر

يأتي الفعل بعد هذه الأفعال إما مضاف إليه (ing) أو في المصدر، مع اختلاف في المعنى.

- They see the children playing with drums.

مع (ing) شاهد جزء من الحدث أو من منتصفه.

- It's interesting to watch them work.

مع (inf) شاهد الحدث كاملاً.

2 furniture / bread

- هذه الكلمات تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد ويتبعها فعل مفرد:

- There is little furniture in the room.

- There isn't much bread in the fridge.

3 It is + صفة + to + مصدر الفعل

- It is fun to play and enjoy the sounds of Old Cairo.

Study the following

1 It is a great day in Cairo.

- إنه يومٌ رائعٌ في القاهرة.

2 Maged visits Khan El Khalili with his family.

- زار ماجد خان الخليلي مع عائلته.

3 First, they buy souvenirs from the market.

- أولاً، اشترى هدايا تذكارية من السوق.

4 His sister chooses a colorful necklace.

- اختارت أخته عقد ملون.

5 They walk through the old streets.

- تجولوا في الشوارع القديمة.

6 They take more photos in the old streets.

- التقطوا المزيد من الصور في الشوارع القديمة.

7 There are many beautiful doors and buildings with Arabic designs.

- هناك العديد من الأبواب والمباني الجميلة ذات التصميم العربي.

8 They learn many new things about Egyptian history.

- تعلموا الكثير من الأشياء الجديدة عن التاريخ المصري.

9 They laugh and enjoy the music.

- ضحكوا واستمتعوا بالموسيقى.

10 It is fun to play and enjoy the sounds of Old Cairo.

- من الممتع اللعب والاستمتاع بأصوات القاهرة القديمة.

11 In the evening, they visit ancient sites near the area.

- في المساء، زاروا المواقع الأثرية القريبة من المنطقة.

12 He loves spending time in Egypt and learning about its culture.

- يحب قضاء الوقت في مصر والتعرف على ثقافتها.



Tape Script



A Day in Egypt

It is a **great**⁽¹⁾ day in Cairo. Maged visits Khan El Khalili with his family. It is very **exciting**!⁽²⁾

إنه يوم رائع في القاهرة. يزور ماجد خان الخليلي مع عائلته. إنه مكان مثير جداً!

In the old streets, they can do many **activities**⁽³⁾.

في الشوارع القديمة، يمكنهم القيام بالعديد من الأنشطة.

First, they buy **souvenirs**⁽⁴⁾ from the market. There are many beautiful things like bags, **lamps**,⁽⁵⁾ and **bracelets**⁽⁶⁾. His sister chooses a colorful **necklace**.⁽⁷⁾

أولاً، يشترون هدايا تذكارية من السوق. هناك أشياء كثيرة جميلة مثل الحقايب، والمصابيح، والأساور. تختار أخته عقداً ملوّناً وجميلاً.

Then, they **walk through**⁽⁸⁾ the old streets and watch people **baking**⁽⁹⁾ bread. The **smell**⁽¹⁰⁾ is **amazing**!⁽¹¹⁾ They also see shops where workers make **furniture**⁽¹²⁾ by hand. It is interesting to watch them work.

بعد ذلك، يمشون في الشوارع القديمة ويرون أشخاصاً يخبزون الخبز. رائحة الخبز رائعة! كما

يتأهّدون محلات يصنع فيها العمال الأثاث يدوياً. من الممتع أن نراهم يعملون.

They take more **photos**⁽¹³⁾ in the old streets. There are many beautiful doors and buildings with Arabic **designs**⁽¹⁴⁾. Maged stands near a big wooden **gate**⁽¹⁵⁾ and smiles for the camera. Then, they walk to a small museum. It has old coins, clothes, and tools from the past. They learn many new things about Egyptian history.

يلتقطون المزيد من الصور في الشوارع القديمة. هناك أبواب ومباني جميلة بتصميمات عربية. يقف ماجد بجانب بوابة خشبية كبيرة ويتسمم للكاميرا. ثم يذهبون إلى متحف صغير. يوجد فيه عملات قديمة، وملابس، وأدوات من الماضي. يتعلمون أشياء جديدة عن تاريخ مصر.

They also see some children playing with small drums in the street. They laugh and enjoy the music. Maged's brother joins them for a few minutes. It is fun to play and enjoy the sounds of Old Cairo.

كما يرون بعض الأطفال يلعبون بالطبول الصغيرة في الشارع. يضحكون ويستمتعون بالموسيقى.

ينضم أخو ماجد إليهم لبعض الوقت. من الممتع اللعب والاستماع إلى أصوات القاهرة القديمة.

In the evening, they visit ancient sites near the area. They are big and beautiful! They take many photos of them. It is a fun day. He loves spending time in Egypt and learning about its culture.

في المساء، يزورون أماكن أثرية قريبة من المنطقة. إنها كبيرة وجميلة! يلتقطون الكثير من الصور لها.

إنه يوم ممتع. يحب ماجد قضاء الوقت في مصر وتعلم المزيد عن ثقافتها.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- رائع
- ٢- مثير
- ٣- أنشطة
- ٤- هدايا تذكارية
- ٥- مصابيح
- ٦- أساور
- ٧- عقد
- ٨- يمشي عبر
- ٩- يخبزون
- ١٠- رائحة
- ١١- رائعة
- ١٢- أثاث
- ١٣- صور
- ١٤- تصميم عربي
- ١٥- بوابة

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة،

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Khan El Khalili is in

- ☐ a a small village ☐ b a school ☐ c Cairo ☐ d a farm

2. You can smell in the market.

- ☐ a Flowers and trees ☐ b Food and spices ☐ c New cars ☐ d Clean water

3. You can buy there.

- ☐ a books and pens ☐ b cars and bikes
☐ c bags and jewelry ☐ d computers and phones

4. The market is near

- ☐ a a big lake ☐ b old buildings and places
☐ c a new hotel ☐ d a movie theater

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة،

1. Carpenters..... furniture in Damietta.

- ☐ a buy ☐ b visit ☐ c take ☐ d make

SB

2. Tourists come to Egypt to..... the ancient sites.

- ☐ a visit ☐ b make ☐ c buy ☐ d take

SB

3. At Khan El Khalili, people like to buy like necklaces and lamps.

- ☐ a souvenirs ☐ b furniture ☐ c music ☐ d books

4. Old Cairo is a famous area with many old buildings.

- ☐ a colorful ☐ b ancient ☐ c wooden ☐ d bored

5. The market is always full of people, so it is very

- ☐ a amazing ☐ b fun ☐ c busy ☐ d great

6. A is a beautiful piece of jewelry you can wear around your neck.

- ☐ a bracelet ☐ b coin ☐ c necklace ☐ d lamp

7. The in Old Cairo shows art and history from long ago.

- ☐ a market ☐ b museum ☐ c gate ☐ d designs

8. Tourists love to visit like the Pyramids and old temples.

- a** ancient sites **b** furniture **c** photos **d** souvenirs

9. The in Egypt is very rich and interesting.

- a** culture **b** drum **c** coin **d** skirt

10. The wooden at the entrance of the market is very old.

- a** lamp **b** gate **c** bracelet **d** coin

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار.

smell - souvenirs - museum - furniture

Ancient sites are exciting to visit. You can walk to a small ① and see old coins and art. The culture is amazing. People make ② from wood. You can buy a skirt or a colorful bracelet. The ③ of bread is great. There are many fun things to do. You can play music on a drum or dive into history. The designs on the walls are beautiful.

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

It is a sunny day in Cairo. Maged visits Khan El Khalili with his family. The streets are old and full of life. Maged is very excited! First, they walk in the market and buy some souvenirs. His sister buys a colorful necklace. There are also bags, lamps, and bracelets. Then, they see people baking bread in the street. The smell is amazing! They also visit small shops where people make furniture by hand. Maged likes watching them work. Later, they go to a small museum. It has old coins, clothes, and tools from the past. Maged learns many things about Egyptian history. Before they leave, they see some children playing small drums in the street. Maged and his brother smile and take photos. It is a fun day!

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Maged visits with his family.

- a** the zoo **b** a library
c Khan El Khalili **d** the cinema

2. In the market, Maged's sister buys a

- a** necklace **b** bracelet **c** bag **d** lamp

Unit 1 Amazing places in Egypt

A. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

4. What does Maged learn about in the museum?

5. What are the children doing in the street at the end of the day?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. take - old - They - photos - in the - streets.

2. buy - the market - They - souvenirs - from.

3. - with - visits - family - his - Maged - Khan El Khalili.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يأتي:

1. it is a great day in cairo.

2. my sister chooses a colorful necklace

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



coral reefs

الشعاب المرجانية



snorkel

يغطس بأنبوب تنفس



landscape

منظر طبيعي

beauty

جمال

marine life

الحياة البحرية

protected area

منطقة محمية

mangrove trees

شجر المانجروف

clean

نظيف

safe

آمن



Other words

كلمات أخرى

famous

مشهور

beach

شاطئ

national park

حديقة وطنية

Bedouins

البدو

south

الجنوب

nearby

بالجوار

north

الشمال

peaceful

هادئ

clear

واضح

visitor

زائر

nature

طبيعة

mountain

جبل

kind= type

نوع

quiet

هادئ

sea turtles

سلاحف بحرية

land

أرض

Unit 1 Amazing places in Egypt

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

known for	معروف بـ	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
home to	موطن لـ	learn about	يتعلم بشأن
take care of	يهتم بـ	go diving	يذهب للغطس
care for	يراعي / يهتم	full of	ملء بـ
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

protect	يحمي
follow	يتبع
contain	يحتوي على
dive	يغطس

Past ماض

protected
followed
contained
dived

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

keep	يحفظ
see	يرى
swim	يسبح
take care	يهتم

Past ماض

kept
saw
swam
took care

Language notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 live / alive / life

- live (v) lived - يعيش

- I **live** in Cairo.

- live (adj) - بث مباشر

- I watched the match **live** on TV.

- alive (adj) - حي

- Is your mother still **alive**?

- life (n) - الحياة

- There is no **life** on the moon.

2 park / garden

- Park حديقة عامة / متنزه

- We go to the **park** every Friday.

- garden حديقة خاصة

- We grow flowers in our **garden**.

Study the following

1 Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in the south of Sinai, Egypt.

- رأس محمد هي محمية طبيعية شهيرة تقع جنوب سيناء في مصر.

2 It is known for its beautiful coral reefs, colorful fish, and clear blue sea.

- تشتهر بشعابها المرجانية الجميلة، وأسماكها الملونة، وبحرها الأزرق الصافي.

3 People from all over the world visit Ras Mohamed to swim, snorkel, and dive.

- يزور رأس محمد الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم للسباحة والغطس والغوص.

4 The park is home to many kinds of animals and plants.

- تُعد الحديقة موطنًا للعديد من أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات.

5 You can see sea turtles, dolphins, and many types of birds.

- يمكنك مشاهدة السلاحف البحرية والدلافين وأنواع عديدة من الطيور.

6 There are also mountains and mangrove trees near the beach.

- كما توجد جبال وأشجار مانجروف بالقرب من الشاطئ.

7 Ras Mohamed is a protected area.

- رأس محمد منطقة محمية.

8 It is important to follow the rules to keep the park clean and safe.

- من المهم اتباع القواعد للحفاظ على نظافة الحديقة وسلامتها.

9 In the park, visitors learn about nature, marine life, and how to protect the environment.

- في الحديقة، يتعرف الزوار على الطبيعة والحياة البحرية وكيفية حماية البيئة.

10 They also learn about the culture of the local Bedouins who live nearby.

- كما يتعرفون على ثقافة البدو المحليين الذين يعيشون بالجوار.

11 Ras Mohamed is a great place for anyone who loves the sea, animals, and peaceful landscapes.

- رأس محمد وجهة رائعة لكل من يعشق البحر والحيوانات والمناظر الطبيعية الهادئة.



Reading



The Beauty of Ras Mohamed

Ras Mohamed is a famous **national park**⁽¹⁾ in the south of Sinai, Egypt. It is **known for**⁽²⁾ its beautiful **coral reefs**⁽³⁾, colorful fish, and clear blue sea. People from all over the world visit Ras Mohamed to swim, **snorkel**⁽⁴⁾, and **dive**⁽⁵⁾.

The nature⁽⁶⁾ in Ras Mohamed National Park is amazing. The park is **home to**⁽⁷⁾ many kinds of animals and plants. You can see **sea turtles**⁽⁸⁾, dolphins, and many types of birds. There are also mountains and **mangrove trees**⁽⁹⁾ near the beach.



Ras Mohamed is a **protected area**⁽¹⁰⁾. This means that people must take care of the land, sea, and animals. It is important to follow the rules to keep the park clean and safe.

In the park, visitors learn about nature, **marine life**⁽¹¹⁾, and how to **protect**⁽¹²⁾ the **environment**⁽¹³⁾. They also learn about the **culture**⁽¹⁴⁾ of the local Bedouins who live nearby.



Ras Mohamed is a great place for anyone who loves the sea, animals, and **peaceful landscapes**⁽¹⁵⁾.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- حديقة وطنية
- ٢- معروف بـ
- ٣- الشعاب المرجانية
- ٤- يغوص بأنبوب تنفس
- ٥- يغوص
- ٦- الطبيعة
- ٧- موطن لـ
- ٨- سلاحف بحرية
- ٩- أشجار المانجروف
- ١٠- منطقة محمية
- ١١- الحياة البحرية
- ١٢- يحمي
- ١٣- البيئة
- ١٤- الثقافة
- ١٥- مناظر طبيعية هادئة

Language

ملاحظات لغوية

Present Simple الزمن المضارع البسيط

① زمن المضارع البسيط يستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق العامة، والعادات، والروتين اليومي، والأفعال المتكررة، والحقائق العلمية.

Form

التكوين

صيغة المضارع البسيط،

(He, She, It) / الاسم المفرد + verb + (s-es-ies)

② الفعل يأخذ (s) أو (es) أو (ies) في نهاية الفعل

- He **plays** football. (هو يلعب كرة القدم). - She **watches** TV. (هي تشاهد التلفاز).

I, You, We, They / الاسم الجمع + (inf) مصدر الفعل

⊙ الفعل يأتي في المصدر.

- We **play** football. (نحن نلعب كرة القدم). - They **watch** TV. (هم يشاهدون التلفاز).

Usage استخدام

⊙ استخدامات المضارع البسيط:

a. General truths or facts.

- الحقائق العامة:

- Nubians **live** in the south of Egypt.

b. Habits and regular actions.

- العادات والروتين اليومي:

- Children often **help** their parents after school.

c. Repeated actions.

- الأحداث المتكررة:

- I **go** to the cinema every week.

Negative النفي

⊙ النفي في المضارع البسيط:

He, She, It, الاسم المفرد + **doesn't** + inf.

- He **doesn't** play football. (هو لا يلعب كرة القدم).

I, You, We, They + **don't** + inf.

- They **don't** watch TV. (هم لا يشاهدون التلفاز).

لاحظ عند استخدام **never** في النفي مع **He/She/It** يبقى الفعل كما هو بإضافة (s)

- He **never** uses a laptop.

Question السؤال

⊙ السؤال في المضارع البسيط:

Does + he / she / it الاسم المفرد + inf.?

- **Does** he **play** football?

- Yes, he **does**. اجابة مثبتة - No, he **doesn't** اجابة منفية

- Where **does** he **work**?

Do + I / we / you / they/ الاسم جمع + inf.?

- **Do** they **watch** TV? (هل يشاهدون التلفاز؟)

- Yes, they **do**. اجابة مثبتة - No, they **don't** اجابة منفية

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- every (day - week - month - year) always / usually / sometimes / often / never

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ras Mohamed is a area, so people must care for it. SB
 a hard b protected c colorful d soft
2. It's important to keep the park clean and SB
 a national b noisy c safe d colorful
3. People enjoy the quiet and beautiful in Ras Mohamed National Park. SB
 a landscapes b lamps c drinks d types
4. Ras Mohamed is full of animals, plants, and colorful under its sea. SB
 a pens b coral reefs c landscapes d books
5. Visitors can learn about the of the local people. SB
 a future b names c hobbies d culture
6. The coral reefs in the Red Sea are full of colorful fish and life.
 a busy b marine c noisy d clean
7. When you snorkel, you can see amazing under the water.
 a mountains b beauty c Bedouins d nearby
8. Ras Mohammed is a famous park in South Sinai.
 a bad b national c busy d quiet

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

national - landscape - mountains - marine

Sinai is a land of amazing beauty. It has high ❶, golden beaches, and clear blue seas. In the south, you can visit Ras Mohamed, a famous ❷ park. This protected area is full of colorful coral reefs and ❸ life like sea turtles and dolphins. The landscape is peaceful and perfect for snorkeling.

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Sarah and Ahmed went on a trip to Ras Mohamed National Park in South Sinai, Egypt. "The sea is so clear and blue!" said Ahmed. They saw colorful fish, coral reefs, and even sea turtles. Sarah loved snorkeling and watching the fish swim around her. They also saw dolphins and many kinds of birds. At the park, they learned about nature, marine life, and how to protect the environment. They also learned about the Bedouin people who live near the park. "We must keep the park clean because it is a protected area," said Sarah. It was a fun and exciting trip!

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Sarah and Ahmed went to on their trip.

☐ a the desert	☐ b a shopping mall
☐ c Ras Mohamed National Park	☐ d a big city
- Sarah and Ahmed saw sea turtles, dolphins, and many

☐ a trees	☐ b birds	☐ c cars	☐ d buildings
-------------------------------	-------------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------------

A. Answer the following questions:

- What animals did Sarah and Ahmed see in Ras Mohamed?

- What did they learn during their visit to the park?

- Why is it important to take care of Ras Mohamed National Park?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- visit - People - Ras Mohamed - year - every.

SB

- is - famous - a - Ras Mohamed - Park - National.

SB

- is - The sea - full - fish - of - colorful.

SB

Unit 1 Amazing places in Egypt

4. always - is - happy - **She** - active - and.

SB

5. protect - help - the park - nature - **Does** ?

SB

5 Read and write the correct form of the word (words) in bracket:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My uncle **(travel)** to a different country every year.

SB

2. **(Does)** Basil and Nader go to work by car?

SB

3. She **(don't)** study in the afternoon.

SB

4. How **(do)** Omar get ready for the exam?

SB

5. The park **(have)** many kinds of animals.

SB

6. She always **(take)** photos of nature.

SB

7. Bedouins **(lives)** near Ras Mohamed.

SB

8. The Red Sea **(contain)** many colorful fish.

9. Tourists **(going)** diving and swimming in Ras Mohamed.

10. They **(plays)** football every Saturday.

11. He **(like)** to eat apples.

12. We **(living)** in a big house.

13. The sun **(rise)** in the east.

14. Does she **(speaks)** French?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. does Ayman enjoy diving in the sea

2. Ras mohamed is a protected area

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



fishing nets	شباك الصيد	responsibilities	مسؤوليات
loom	النول (أداة للنسيج)	dye	يصبغ
oasis	واحة	voice	صوت إنسان
repair	يصلح	accompany	يصطحب
spin	يفزل	harvest	يحصد / حصاد / محصول
villager	شخص قروي	fisherman	صياد



Other words

كلمات أخرى

voice recordings	تسجيلات صوتية	crop	محصول
daily	يومي	interesting	شيق
boats	القوارب	job	وظيفة
breeze	النسيم	carpets	سجاد
lake	بحيرة	dry	جاف
quiet	هادئ	rug	سجادة صغيرة / مشاية
tool	أداة / عدة	crafts	حرف يدوية
the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	factory	مصنع

Expressions, prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

catch fish	يصطاد سمك	feed the animals	يطعم الحيوانات
water the plants	يروي النباتات	listen to	يستمع إلى
spin wool	يفزل الصوف		

Definitions تعريفات

accompany	يصطحب	To go somewhere with another person.
looms	أنوال (آلات نسيج)	Machines for making cloth or carpets.
fishing net	شبكة الصيد	A tool made of rope or string used to catch fish.
dye	يصبغ / يلون	To color cloth or wool using a special liquid.

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
harvest	يحصد
clean	ينظف
finish	ينهي
dry	يجفف
relax	يسترخي
start	يبدأ
describe	يصف
accompany	يصطحب
support	يدعم / يساعد

Past ماض	
harvested	
cleaned	
finished	
dried	
relaxed	
started	
described	
accompanied	
supported	

Present مضارع	
know	يعرف
catch	يصطاد
sit	يجلس
grow	يزرع
sell	يبيع
weave	ينسج
feed	يطعم

Past ماض	
knew	
caught	
sat	
grew	
sold	
wove	
fed	

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

- Speak up. I can't hear your **voice**.

كلمة **voice** تعني صوت بشري .

- Can you turn down the **sound** of the radio, please?

كلمة **sound** صوت الأشياء .

1

voice (n)

sound (n)

Study the following

- 1 People here are fishermen. - الناس هنا صيادون.
- 2 I accompany my father to catch fish early in the morning. - أرافق والدي لصيد السمك في الصباح الباكر.
- 3 Some villagers work in fish factories or repair boats. - يعمل بعض القرويين في مصانع الأسماك أو في إصلاح القوارب.
- 4 People fish using small wooden boats. - يصطاد الناس باستخدام قوارب خشبية صغيرة.
- 5 I help my uncle clean the fishing nets. - أساعد عمي في تنظيف شباك الصيد.
- 6 Some women also help catch fish. - تساعد بعض النساء أيضًا في صيد السمك.
- 7 In the evening, we sit together and drink hot tea outside. - في مساء، نجلس معًا ونشرب الشاي الساخن في الخارج.
- 8 My family grows fruits and vegetables. - نزرع عائلتي الفاكهة والخضراوات.
- 9 We water the plants, harvest the crops, and feed our animals. - نسقي النباتات، ونحصد المحاصيل، ونطعم حيواناتنا.
- 10 We go to the market to sell food. - نذهب إلى السوق لبيع الطعام.
- 11 People in my village make carpets, rugs, and crafts. - يصنع أهل قريتي السجاد والمشايات والمشغولات اليدوية.
- 12 My family spins wool and weaves it on looms. - تغزل عائلتي الصوف وتنسجه على الأنوال.
- 13 I help my mother dye the wool with natural colors. - أساعد والدتي في صباغة الصوف بألوان طبيعية.
- 14 Some visitors come to buy rugs from the village shops. - يأتي بعض الزوار لشراء والمشايات من متاجر القرية.



استمع إلى النص:



Tape Script

Mr. Nader: As part of our "Know Egypt" project⁽¹⁾, we'll listen to four voice recordings⁽²⁾ from four students. They'll describe life, work, and daily responsibilities⁽³⁾ in their villages.

الأستاذ نادر: كجزء من مشروعنا "اعرف مصر"، سنستمع إلى أربع تسجيلات صوتية من أربعة طلاب. سيصفون فيها الحياة والعمل والمسؤوليات اليومية في قرأهم.

Amina : Hello! I'm Amina from Ezbet El Borg in Damietta. People here are fishermen. I accompany⁽⁴⁾ my father to catch fish early in the morning. Some villagers⁽⁵⁾ work in fish factories or repair⁽⁶⁾ boats. We eat fish almost every day and enjoy the cool sea breeze⁽⁷⁾.

أمينة: مرحباً! أنا أمينة من عزبة البرج في دمياط. الناس هنا يعملون في صيد السمك. أنا أذهب مع والدي لصيد السمك في الصباح الباكر. بعض سكان القرية يعملون في مصانع السمك أو في تصليح القوارب. نحن نأكل السمك تقريباً كل يوم. ونستمتع بنسيم البحر البارد.

Omar : My name is Omar. I live in Shakhloba in Kafr El Sheikh near Lake Manzala. People fish using small wooden⁽⁸⁾ boats. I help my uncle clean the fishing nets⁽⁹⁾. Some women also help catch fish. In the evening, we sit together and drink hot tea outside.

عمر: اسمي عمر. أعيش في شخلوبا قرب بحيرة المنزلة في كفر الشيخ. الناس هنا يصطادون السمك باستخدام قوارب خشبية صغيرة. أنا أساعد عمي في تنظيف شباك الصيد. بعض النساء أيضاً يساعدن في صيد السمك. في المساء، نجلس معاً ونشرب الشاي الساخن في الخارج.

Salma : Hi! I'm Salma from Qutur in Gharbia. My family grows fruits and vegetables. We water the plants, harvest the crops⁽¹⁰⁾, and feed our animals. On Fridays, we go to the market to sell food. Life is quiet, but we are always busy.

سلمى: مرحباً! أنا سلمى من قطور في الغربية. نزرع عائلتي الفواكه والخضروات. نقوم بروي النباتات. وحصاد المحاصيل. وإطعام الحيوانات. في يوم الجمعة، نذهب إلى السوق لنبيع الطعام. الحياة هادئة، لكننا دائماً مشغولون.

Hassan : Hi! I'm Hassan from Bashandy, a village in the Dakhla Oasis⁽¹¹⁾ in the Western Desert. People in my village make carpets⁽¹²⁾, rugs, and crafts⁽¹³⁾. My family spins⁽¹⁴⁾ wool and weaves it on looms. I help my mother dye the wool with natural colors. Some visitors come to buy rugs from the village shops.

حسن: مرحباً! أنا حسن من بشندي، وهي قرية في واحة الداخلة في الصحراء الغربية. الناس هنا يصنعون السجاد. والمنتجات والمشايخ اليدوية. عائلتي تقوم بغزل الصوف، ونقوم بنسجه على أنوال. أنا أساعد أمي في صبغ الصوف بالألوان الطبيعية. بعض الزوار يأتون إلى القرية لشراء السجاد من المحلات.

Mr. Nader: Thank you! These villages show how people in Egypt live, work, and support their families every day. Great job!

الأستاذ نادر: شكراً لكم! هذه القرى تظهر كيف يعيش الناس في مصر. وكيف يعملون ويهتمون بعائلاتهم كل يوم. عمل رائع!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- مشروع اعرف مصر
- ٢- تسجيلات صوتية
- ٣- مسؤوليات
- ٤- يصطحب
- ٥- قرويين
- ٦- يصلح
- ٧- نسيم البحر
- ٨- خشبي
- ٩- شبكات الصيد
- ١٠- المحاصيل
- ١١- واحة الداخلة
- ١٢- سجاد
- ١٣- مشغولات يدوية
- ١٤- يغزل



Pronunciation

To say the /əɪ/ sound open your mouth slightly, say "eh" then add the /r/ sound. It's one sound like in "wear" or "stare"

• نطق صوت /əɪ/ افتح فمك قليلا وقل "إه" ثم اضع صوت /r/ انه صوت واحد كما في كلمتي **stare** و **bear**

• ندرس في هذا الدرس الرمز الصوتي /əɪ/ والمهم هنا أن نعرف الصوت /əɪ/ حيث يمثل نطق حرف /o/ في كلمة

second كما في الكلمات القادمة



bear

دب



stare

يحدق



square

ميدان



scared

خائف / مرعوب



wear

يرتدى



airport

مطار



Other words

كلمات أخرى

ladder

سلم

pear

كمثرى

hammer

شاكوش

nightmare

كابوس

purse

حافظة نقود

hare

ارنب برى

1 Listen and circle the word that ends with /əɪ/ sound:

انظر وضع دائرة حول الكلمات التي تنتهي بـ /əɪ/

1. ladder - hare - hammer - - - - -

2. there - here - near - - - - -

3. purse - nurse - pear - - - - -

2 Read, underline, and write only the words that have the /əɪ/ sound:

اقرأ وضع خط تحت الكلمات التي بها صوت /əɪ/

1. Where did your aunt go last week?

2. I had a nightmare last night that scared me..

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. In Amira's village, people are They catch fish every day. **SB**

- a** doctors **b** fishermen **c** builders **d** teachers

2. In Omar's village, people fish using small **SB**

- a** looms **b** carpets **c** fishing nets **d** airport

3. Farmers in Salma's village the crops. **SB**

- a** harvest **b** spin **c** fish **d** weave

4. Hassan's family wool and weaves it on looms. **SB**

- a** catches **b** harvests **c** spins **d** feeds

5. I go to the beach and enjoy the cool sea **SB**

- a** voice **b** tool **c** quiet **d** breeze

6. My grandmother has beautiful soft on her floor.

- a** carpets **b** fishing nets **c** loom **d** wooden

7. A/ An is a green place with water in the middle of a desert.

- a** loom **b** tool **c** Oasis **d** village

8. I always my father to the market on Fridays.

- a** looms **b** dye **c** accompany **d** fishing net

9. My mother uses natural colors to the wool.

- a** looms **b** dye **c** fishing net **d** accompany

10. Workers in the village use to make carpets and rugs.

- a** accompany **b** fishing nets **c** looms **d** dye

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

repair - fishing - accompany - breeze

People in this village are fishermen. Children often ① their parents to catch fish early in the morning. Some villagers work in fish factories or ② boats. They eat fish almost every day and enjoy the cool sea ③

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. clean - help - my uncle - nets - I - the - fishing.

2. to - food - the market - to - We - sell - go.

3. fish - villagers - factories - work - Some - in.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. my dad drives me to school

2. In amina s village, people are fishermen.

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Life in Egyptian Villages

- fishing
- crafts

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



take out books	يُخرج الكتب من الحقيبة	national anthem	النشيد الوطني
salute the flag	يُحي العلم	routine	روتين
pack schoolbag	يعبئ الحقيبة المدرسية	typical day	يوم نموذجي
play in the ground	يلعب بالفناء	try my best	أبذل ما في وسعي
have a short break	يأخذ استراحة قصيرة	tricky	صعب



Other words

كلمات أخرى

normal	عادي	beans	فول
subject	مادة دراسية	vegetables	خضراوات
group	مجموعة	cement	أسمنت
a bit	قليلا	clothes	ملابس
topic	موضوع	governorate	محافظة
Arabic	اللغة العربية	break	فسحة
science	علوم	religion	دين
social studies	دراسات اجتماعية	P.E.	تربية بدنية



Expressions, prepositions

تعابير وأحرف جر

do well	يؤدي جيدا	feel a bit tired	أشعر بالتعب قليلا
get dressed	يرتدي ملابسه	do my homework	أعمل واجبي
stand in line	نقف في صف	looks like	يشبه / يبدو مثل
sing the national anthem	نغني النشيد الوطني	bye for now	مع السلامة الآن
work on farms	يعمل في المزارع	spend time	يقضي الوقت
hang out with	يتجول مع		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
use يستخدم	used	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
chat يدرّش	chatted	leave يغادر	left
laugh يضحك	laughed	learn يتعلم	learnt
rest يرتاح	rested	grow يزرع	grew
prepare يجهز	prepared	sing يغني	sang

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

- We have a **break** between lessons at school.

break (v) broke يكسر / ينكسر

1
break (n/v)
فسحة / يكسر

- Someone **broke** the glass of the window.

spend (v) + time يقضي + v-ing

2
Spend (v) + time
يقضي

- We **spent** 3 days in Alexandria.
- They **spent** 2 hours studying.

spend + money ينفق + on

- We **spent** a lot of money on clothes.

Study the following

- 1 We start the day outside by standing in line.** - نبدأ يومنا بالوقوف في طابور في الخارج.
- 2 We salute the flag, and sing the national anthem.** - نحیی العلم، ونغنی النشید الوطنی.
- 3 We go to our classrooms and begin our lessons.** - نذهب إلى فصولنا ونبدأ دروسنا.
- 4 Some topics are a bit tricky, but I try my best.** - بعض المواضيع صعبة بعض الشيء، لكنني أبذل قصارى جهدي.
- 5 I usually eat a sandwich and hang out with my friends.** - عادةً ما أتناول ساندوتش وأقضي وقتاً ممتعاً مع أصدقائي.

Unit 1 Amazing places in Egypt

6 I enjoy learning how to use the computer in class.

- أستمتع بتعلم كيفية استخدام الكمبيوتر في الفصل.

7 I go home, eat lunch, rest a little, and then do my homework.

- أعود إلى المنزل، وأتناول الغداء، وأستريح قليلاً، ثم أؤدي واجباتي المدرسية.

8 That's what a school day looks like for me.

- هكذا يبدو يومي الدراسي.

9 Many people work on farms. They grow cotton, beans, and vegetables.

- يعمل الكثير من الناس في المزارع. يزرعون القطن والفاصوليا والخضراوات.

10 People wake up early, they clean the house and prepare breakfast.

- يستيقظ الناس باكراً، ينظفون المنزل ويعدون الفطور.

11 Some work in factories. They make cement and clothes.

- يعمل البعض في المصانع. يصنعون الإسمنت والملابس.

12 At noon, families eat lunch together. They eat rice, bread, and vegetables.

- في الظهيرة، تتناول العائلات الغداء معاً. يأكلون الأرز والخبز والخضراوات.



New Message

To : mark @gmail.com
From : fady @gmail.com
Subject : Daily school life in Egypt

Cc Bcc

Hi Mark,

How are you? I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you about a **normal** ⁽¹⁾ day at my school here in Egypt.

My day starts early. I **wake up** ⁽²⁾ around 6:30 a.m., **get dressed** ⁽³⁾ and have a quick breakfast-usually bread, cheese, and fruit. The school day begins at 7:30. We start it by **standing in line** ⁽⁴⁾, **saluting the flag** ⁽⁵⁾, and singing **the national anthem** ⁽⁶⁾. Then we go to our classrooms and begin our lessons. Our first subject is usually Arabic.

Next, we have subjects like math, English, and science. Some **topics** ⁽⁷⁾ are a bit **tricky** ⁽⁸⁾, but I **try my best** ⁽⁹⁾. At around 10:15, we have a short **break** ⁽¹⁰⁾. I usually eat a sandwich, play with my friends, chat and laugh.

Later, we have more lessons like social studies, religion, or computer. I enjoy learning how to use the computer in class. However, my favorite subject is P.E. The school day ends at 1:30 p.m. I usually feel a bit tired, but I'm happy after a good day. I go home, eat lunch, rest a little, and then do my homework.

That's what a school day looks like for me. What about you?

Bye for now,

Fady

Send



Arabic Meaning

- ١- عادي
- ٢- يستيقظ
- ٣- يرتدي ملابسه
- ٤- نقف في الطابور
- ٥- نحي العلم
- ٦- النشيد الوطني
- ٧- موضوعات
- ٨- صعبة
- ٩- أبذل قصارى جهدي
- ١٠- فسحة

Look and read the poster about Beni Suef

انظر واقرأ منشور عن بني سويف

Making a Poster About Daily Life in a Governorate

Explore the Daily Life in Beni Suef

1



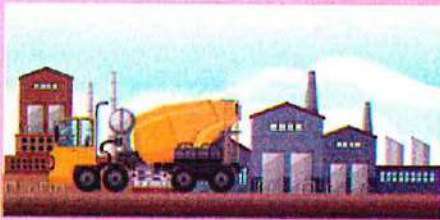
People wake up early, clean the house and prepare breakfast.

2



Many people work on farms. They grow cotton, beans, and vegetables.

3



Some people work in factories. They make cement and clothes.

4



At noon, families eat lunch together. They eat rice, bread, and vegetables.



How to write an informal email

كيف تكتب إيميل غير رسمي

ندرس في هذا الدرس كيفية كتابة البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي حيث يبدأ بـ

عبارة افتتاحية

1. Opening phrase

- Hi,

2. A friendly expression

تعبير ودود

- Hey! How are you doing?
- How are things with you?
- How's it going?
- What's up with you?
- I hope you're well.
- Or if you are responding to an email that your friend sent you, you could say:

⊙ أما إذا كان الإيميل ردًا على إيميل سابق نقول:

- Thanks for your email.
- It was great to hear from you.
- I enjoyed reading your email.

3. Opening sentence

جملة افتتاحية

- I just wanted to let you know...
- I'm writing because...
- I hope you're doing well.

4. Informal expressions

عبارات غير رسمية

- a really cool park,
- Hope you're doing well!

5. A request to reader

طلب من القارئ

- Please write back soon

6. Closing phrase

عبارة ختامية

- Lots of love
- See you soon!
- Bye for now
- Can't wait to hear about
- Love, [your name]
- All the best, [your name]

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. In the morning, students sing the national SB
 a farm b poem c anthem d line
2. Fady usually feels a bit after school. He usually goes to bed. SB
 a active b tired c quiet d worried
3. Students have a short to rest and have lunch.
 a lesson b class c walk d break
4. Students the flag every day at school.
 a visit b salute c try d sing
5. Today's math class will have a new to learn about.
 a group b routine c topic d date
6. We have class on Tuesdays and Thursdays to learn about the world.
 a P.E. b Arabic c social studies d science
7. In class, we do fun experiments to learn how things work.
 a religion b Arabic c science d social studies
8. Every morning, we to show respect for our country.
 a take out books b pack schoolbag
 c salute the flag d sit down

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

breakfast - science - playground - friends

My name is Fady. I go to school in Egypt. I wake up early and eat my ① before I get dressed. At school, we learn many subjects like Arabic, English, and ② During the break, I play with my ③ and sometimes we go to the playground. I like my school because I learn new things and have fun with my classmate

Unit 1 Amazing places in Egypt

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What time (does) you usually go to bed on school nights? SB
2. We (goes) to the library every Friday to borrow books. SB
3. My sister (play) volleyball with her school team. SB
4. Ahmed (not like) vegetables, but he eats fruit.
5. Their grandmother always (cook) dinner for the whole family.
6. Do they (reading) the newspaper every morning?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. clean - prepare - house - People - the - and - breakfast

2. some - tricky - are - At school, topics - a bit.

3. fish - villagers - factories - work - Some - in.

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A School Day in Egypt

get dressed - science

Review



on Unit 1



buy souvenirs

يشترى هدايا تذكارية



make furniture

يصنع أثاث



play music

يعزف موسيقى



take photos

يلتقط صور



walk to a small museum

يمشي إلى متحف صغير



visit ancient sites

يزور الأماكن القديمة



coral reefs

الشعاب المرجانية



snorkel

يغطس بأنبوب تنفس



landscape

منظر طبيعي

culture	ثقافة	oasis	واحة
beauty	جمال	repair	يصلح
protected area	منطقة محمية	spin	يفزل
Old Cairo	القاهرة القديمة	villager	شخص قروي
marine life	الحياة البحرية	responsibilities	مسؤوليات
mangrove trees	شجر المانجروف	dye	يصبغ
safe	آمن	accompany	يصطحب
fishing nets	شباك الصيد	harvest	يحصد / حصاد / محصول
loom	النول (أداة للنسيج)	take out books	يخرج الكتب من الحقيبة

Unit 1 Amazing places in Egypt

salute the flag	يحي العلم	routine	روتين
pack schoolbag	يعبئ الحقيبة المدرسية	typical day	يوم نموذجي
play in the ground	يلعب بالفناء	try my best	أبذل ما في وسعي
have a short break	يأخذ استراحة قصيرة	tricky	صعب
national anthem	النشيد الوطني		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
visit يزور	visited	buy يشتري	bought
play يعزف	played	take يلتقط / يأخذ	took
enjoy يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	make يصنع	made
protect يحمي	protected	spend يقضي	spent
follow يتبع	followed	keep يحفظ	kept
dive يغطس	dived	swim يسبح	swam
harvest يحصد	harvested	take care يعتني	took care
dry يجفف	dried	catch بصطاد	caught
accompany يصطحب	accompanied	grow يزرع	grew
support يدعم / يساعد	supported	sell يبيع	sold
chat يدرش	chatted	weave ينسج	wove
prepare يجهز	prepared	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
		grow يزرع	grew

Language

ملاحظات لغوية

Present Simple زمن المضارع البسيط

زمن المضارع البسيط يستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق العامة، والعادات، والروتين اليومي، والأفعال المتكررة، والحقائق العلمية.

Form

التكوين

صيغة المضارع البسيط،

(He, She, It) / الاسم المفرد + verb + (s-es-ies)

الفاعل يأخذ (s) أو (es) أو (ies) في نهاية الفعل

- He **plays** football. (هو يلعب كرة القدم). - She **watches** TV. (هي تشاهد التلفاز).

I, You, We, They / الاسم الجمع + (inf) مصدر الفعل

⊙ الفعل يأتي في المصدر.

- We **play** football. (نحن نلعب كرة القدم). - They **watch** TV. (هم يشاهدون التلفاز).

Usage استخدام

⊙ استخدامات المضارع البسيط:

a. General truths or facts.

- الحقائق العامة:

- Nubians **live** in the south of Egypt.

b. Habits and regular actions.

- العادات والروتين اليومي:

- Children often **help** their parents after school.

c. Repeated actions.

- الأحداث المتكررة:

- I **go** to the cinema every week.

Negative النفي

⊙ النفي في المضارع البسيط:

He, She, It, الاسم المفرد + doesn't + inf.

- He **doesn't play** football. (هو لا يلعب كرة القدم).

I, You, We, They + don't + inf.

- They **don't watch** TV. (هم لا يشاهدون التلفاز).

لاحظ عند استخدام **never** في النفي مع **He/She/It** يبقى الفعل كما هو بإضافة (s)

- He **never uses** a laptop.

Question السؤال

⊙ السؤال في المضارع البسيط:

Does + he / she / it الاسم المفرد + inf.?

- **Does** he **play** football?

- Yes, he **does**. - اجابة مثبتة - No, he **doesn't**. - اجابة منفية

- Where **does** he **work**?

Do + I / we / you / they/ الاسم جمع + inf.?

- **Do** they **watch** TV? (هل يشاهدون التلفاز؟)

- Yes, they **do**. - اجابة مثبتة - No, they **don't**. - اجابة منفية

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- every (day - week - month - year) always / usually / sometimes / often / never



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Life in Egyptian Villages

Egyptian villages are full of hard work and amazing traditions. In Ezbet El Borg and Shakhelouba, people fish and repair boats. In Qutur, families grow fruits and vegetables. In Bashandy, villagers make beautiful rugs and crafts. Everyone helps their family, and life is simple but full of daily responsibilities and cooperation.

2

Lesson 4

A School Day in Egypt

A school day in Egypt starts early. I wake up at 6:30 a.m., get dressed, and have breakfast. At school, we stand in line, salute the flag, and sing the national anthem. We study subjects like Arabic, math, and English. After a short break, we continue learning. My favorite subject is P.E. I return home at 1:30 p.m.

3

Test Al-Azhar

The Daily Life in Beni Suef

People in Beni Suef wake up early to start their day. Many families work together in the fields. They grow crops like wheat and corn. Some people also work in factories to help their families. Life in Beni Suef is simple but full of hard work.

4

Test

My Day at School

I wake up early and prepare for school. We begin the day by saluting the flag and singing the national anthem. I learn subjects like science, social studies, and computer. During the break, I talk with my friends and eat a sandwich. My favorite subject is art because I enjoy drawing and coloring.

Al-Azhar Test

امتحان خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

headmaster's - twice - floor - office - often

Hanan and Nada are talking about their school library.

Hanan : Is there a library in your school?

Nada : Yes, there is one next to the headmaster's ①

Hanan : Where is the ② office ?

Nada : It's on the third ③

Hanan : How ④ do you go there?

Nada : I go there ⑤ a week.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

①	visit	take	museum	buy	-----
②	rice	vegetables	park	bread	-----
③	salute	science	social studies	religion	-----
④	cat	dog	ball	fox	-----
⑤	English	Arabic	math	home	-----

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The bird has very feathers: red, blue, and yellow.

- a** salty **b** black **c** colorful **d** quiet

2. My name is Omar; I am Omar.

- a** wanted **b** called **c** knew **d** sent

3. In class, we run and play sports.

- a** subject **b** P.E. **c** topic **d** routine

4. Farmers the crops.

- a** play **b** harvest **c** spin **d** dye

Unit 1 Amazing places in Egypt

5. After the rain, the clothes needed to in the sun.
a dry **b** repair **c** spin **d** dye
6. I drink coffee.
a isn't **b** am not **c** doesn't **d** don't
7. Where do you ?
a working **b** works **c** work **d** worked
8. Birds usually in the morning.
a sing **b** singing **c** sings **d** sung
9. It a lot in winter.
a raining **b** rains **c** rain **d** is rained
10. The children ice cream
a is love **b** loving **c** loves **d** love

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية .

Yomna lives with her family in Mahala. She is in Mahala Prep school. Yomna always gets high marks in all subjects. Her father is a doctor in Mahala Hospital. Her mother is a housewife. She cleans the house .She always stays in the kitchen all day. She cooks the food for her family and washes the dishes. Yomna has got one brother and one sister. Her brother is twenty- nine years old. He is a doctor in the same hospital with his father.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is Yomna a good student?

.....

2. Where does Yomna's brother work ?

.....

3. What does a doctor do?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. Yomna's mother is a
a teacher **b** doctor **c** housewife **d** nurse
5. The underlined word "He" refers to Yomna's
a father **b** uncle **c** mother **d** brother

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. people - farms - work - on - Many.

2. for its - beautiful - is known - coral reefs - Ras Mohamed.

3. the old streets - take more - They - in - photos.

4. ancient - sites - visit - In the evening, - they.

5. protected - is - a - Ras Mohamed - area.

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

The Daily Life in Beni Suef

wake up - work - grow - factories - families

Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Where did Riham spend her holiday?

- ☐ a In Paris ☐ b In Rome ☐ c In Egypt ☐ d In Madrid

2. How was the food?

- ☐ a Nasty ☐ b Bad ☐ c Expired ☐ d Delicious

3. What is Aswan famous for?

- ☐ a The Eiffel Tower ☐ b The Pyramids
☐ c The High Dam ☐ d The Sphinx

4. What did Riham buy for Rawan?

- ☐ a A T-shirt ☐ b A postcard ☐ c A camel ☐ d Nothing

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. are machines for making cloth or carpets.

- ☐ a Boats ☐ b Books ☐ c Looms ☐ d Cars

2. This math problem is difficult, so I need to think carefully.

- ☐ a normal ☐ b a bit ☐ c group ☐ d typical

3. Tourists come to Egypt to the ancient sites.

- ☐ a take ☐ b visit ☐ c eat ☐ d play

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

learn - busy - breakfast - teach

Every day, I wake up for school. I eat ① and get ready. Then, I go to school. My friends are there. We ② many things, like reading and math. I like to draw. At lunchtime, we eat and play outside. After school, I go home. I do my homework. My school day is ③ but fun!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The beach in Sinai is quiet and beautiful. The water is clear so you can see fish swimming near the coral reefs. Some people snorkel or dive to see the amazing marine life. Nearby, there are mangrove trees that make the area clean and safe for animals. Sometimes, you can smell the fresh sea air. If you're lucky, you might see a bird flying over the water. This famous place is perfect for a peaceful day in the sun.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- The water in Sinai is very _____, so you can see fish near the coral reefs.
☐ a dirty ☐ b cold ☐ c clear ☐ d deep
- Some people _____ or dive to see the amazing marine life.
☐ a snorkel ☐ b sleep ☐ c cook ☐ d shout

B. Answer the following questions:

- What kind of trees grow near the beach in Sinai?

- How do mangrove trees help animals?

- What might you see flying over the water?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- snorkel - People - to - in - the - love - Red Sea.

- coral - near - Dolphins - swim - the - reefs.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- My uncle (travel) to London every year.
- My brother (go) to Cairo University.

Unit 1 Amazing places in Egypt

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we ll have cookies when we finish.

2. I live in Shakhlouba near Lake manzala

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

My day at school

break - math

Our Nature

طبيعتنا

Learning Outcomes

Listening:

- Listen to short texts to identify the main idea.

يستمع الطالب إلى نصوص قصيرة لتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية.

- Identify the specific details in a listening text.

يكتب الطالب التفاصيل الدقيقة في نص استماع.

Reading:

- Answer comprehension questions about plants, weather, and animal habitats in Egypt.

يحيب الطالب على أسئلة فهم عن النباتات والطقس ومواطن الحيوانات في مصر.

- Identify main ideas in a text.

يحدد الطالب الأفكار الرئيسية في نص.

- Identify supporting details.

يحدد الطالب التفاصيل الداعمة في نص.

Speaking:

- Talk about how to grow a plant step by step.

يتحدث الطالب عن كيفية زراعة نبات خطوة بخطوة.

- Describe the weather in different places.

يصف الطالب الطقس في أماكن مختلفة.

- Identify and accurately pronounce the phonemes /e/ and /I/.

يتعرف الطالب وينطق بدقة الصوتين /e/ و /I/.

Writing:

- Write sentences using the present continuous tense.

يمتد الطالب جمل باستخدام زمن المضارع المستمر.

- Write a short story about an experience or trip.

يكتب الطالب قصة قصيرة عن تجربة أو رحلة.

Lesson

1

★ Caring for plants

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



natural fertilizer

سماد طبيعي



weeds

الحشائش الضارة



basil

الريحان



hibiscus

الكرنديه



water

يسقي / يروي



plant

يزرع



pull out

يقتلع / يزيل من الجذر

oil

herbs

shade

زيت نباتي

أعشاب

ظلّ

grow

يتحري الدقة للتأكد من شيء / يفحص

care for

ينمو / يزرع

يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ



Other words

كلمات أخرى

sunlight

parsley

flavor

health

insects

fresh air

jasmine

healthy

lovely

tasty

ضوء الشمس

بقدونس

طعم

صحة

حشرات

الهواء الطلق / النقي

نبات الياسمين

صحي

جميل / رائع

شهّي / لذيذ

sweet

incredible

mint tea

guava tree

fig tree

olive tree

thyme

ginger

harmful

sage

حلو المذاق

لا يصدق / رائع جدًا

شاي بالنعناع

شجرة الجوافة

شجرة التين

شجرة الزيتون

نبات الزعتر

زنجبيل

ضار

نبات ميرمية

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

take care of	يهتم بـ / يعتني بـ	at night	في الليل
good for	مفيد لـ / جيد من أجل	over there	هناك
on the balcony	في البلكونة	many years ago	منذ سنوات عديدة
all the time = always	طول الوقت / دائماً	in the morning	في الصباح
since ancient times	منذ العصور القديمة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
look يبدو	looked	keep يحافظ	kept
add يضيف	added	grow يزرع	grew
relax يسترخي	relaxed	drink يشرب	drank
taste مذاقه / يكون له طعم	tasted	give يعطي	gave
sound يبدو	sounded	make يصنع	made
harm يضر / يؤدي	harmed		

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 water / plant / drink / care

● كثير من الكلمات يمكن ان تكون **فعل** او **اسم** على حسب سياق الجملة

water	يروي (فعل) مياه (اسم)	plant	يزرع (فعل) نبات (اسم)
drink	يشرب (فعل) مشروب (اسم)	care	يعتني (فعل) عناية (اسم)

- I **drink** water every day, and my favorite **drink** is orange juice.

2 Take + وقت + to + inf مصدر

يستغرق وقت

- Olives take time to grow.

Study the following

- 1 Your garden looks incredible! تبدو حديقتك مذهلة!
- 2 Plants need water, sunlight and care. تحتاج النباتات الماء وضوء الشمس والرعاية.
- 3 I grow herbs like basil, mint, and parsley. أزرع أعشابًا مثل الريحان والنعناع والبقدونس.
- 4 Hibiscus and jasmine smell lovely. الكركديه والياسمين رائحتهما رائعة.
- 5 I have guava and fig trees. أمتلك أشجار الجوافة والتين.
- 6 Olives take time to grow. الزيتون يحتاج وقتًا لينمو.
- 7 I water plants early in the morning. أروي النباتات مبكرًا في الصباح.
- 8 I use natural fertilizer. أستخدم سمادًا طبيعيًا.



استمع إلى النص:



Tape Script

Laila : Grandpa, your garden looks incredible⁽¹⁾! How do you keep it so green and healthy?

ليلي: حديقتك رائعة يا جدي! كيف تحافظ عليها خضراء وصحية؟

Grandpa : Thank you, Laila. I take care of⁽²⁾ it every day. Plants need water, sunlight⁽³⁾ and care to grow well.

الجد: شكرًا لك يا ليلي. أعني بها يوميًا. تحتاج النباتات إلى الماء وأشعة الشمس والعناية لتنمو جيدًا.

Laila : What kinds of plants do you have here?

ليلي: ما أنواع النباتات التي لديك هنا؟

Grandpa : I grow herbs⁽⁴⁾ like basil⁽⁵⁾, mint⁽⁶⁾, and parsley⁽⁷⁾.

We use them in many Egyptian dishes. Some add

flavor⁽⁸⁾, and others are good for health.

الجد: أزرع أعشابًا مثل الريحان والنعناع والبقدونس. نستخدمها في العديد من الأطباق المصرية.

بعضها يُضيف طعم، والبعض الآخر مفيد للصحة.

Laila : Oh, Dad drinks mint tea every evening on the balcony. It helps him relax.

ليلي: أوه، يشرب أبي شاي النعناع كل مساء في البلكونة. يساعده على الاسترخاء.

Arabic Meaning

١. رائع
٢. يعتني بـ
٣. ضوء الشمس
٤. أعشاب
٥. ريحان
٦. نعناع
٧. بقدونس
٨. طعم

Grandpa : Yes, it tastes good. I also grow **hibiscus**⁽⁹⁾ and **jasmine**⁽¹⁰⁾. They smell lovely, and we use hibiscus to make a tasty drink.

الجد: نعم، طعمه لذيذ. أزرع أيضًا الكركديه والياسمين. راحتهما جميلة، ونستخدم الكركديه لصنع مشروب لذيذ.

Laila : Mom makes hibiscus tea all the time! And jasmine smells amazing at night.

٩. كركدية

١٠. ياسمين

١١. يقتلع

١٢. حشائش ضارة

١٣. يتحقق من

١٤. سماد طبيعي

ليلي: أمي تُحضّر شاي الكركديه طوال الوقت! ورائحة الياسمين رائعة في الليل.

Grandpa : I have guava and fig trees, too. Their fruit is sweet and healthy. Over there are the olive trees.

الجد: لدي أيضًا أشجار جوافة وتين. ثمارها حلوة وصحية. هناك أشجار زيتون.

Laila : Wow! Do Egyptians really grow olives? ليلي: يا إلهي! هل يزرع المصريون الزيتون حقًا؟

Grandpa : Yes. Olives take time to grow, but they are full of oil. People grew olive trees in Egypt many years ago-and they still do.

الجد: أجل. يستغرق الزيتون وقتًا لينمو، لكنه غني بالزيت. زرع الناس أشجار الزيتون في مصر منذ سنوات عديدة، وما زالوا يفعلون.

Laila : That's cool! How do you care for all these plants?

ليلي: رائع! كيف تعتني بكل هذه النباتات؟

Grandpa : I water them early in the morning, **pull out**⁽¹¹⁾ **weeds**⁽¹²⁾, and **check for**⁽¹³⁾ insects. Sometimes I use **natural fertilizer**⁽¹⁴⁾.

الجد: أسقيها في الصباح الباكر، وأزيل الأعشاب الضارة، وأتحقق من وجود الحشرات. أحيانًا أستخدم سمادًا طبيعيًا.

Laila : It sounds like hard work.

ليلي: يبدو الأمر شاقًا.

Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Laila visited her 's garden.
 a friend b grandfather c teacher d neighbor
- Plants need water, sunlight, and to grow.
 a care b food c music d tea
- Laila's father drinks tea every evening.
 a hibiscus b green c mint d lemon
- Grandpa grows hibiscus to make a drink.
 a cold b healthy c hot d tasty

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

moonlight - sunlight - check - plants

My grandfather is a clever farmer. He has a big garden which is full of ①
 Plants need water and ② He takes care of them every day. He pulls out
 weeds and ③ for insects.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Since ancient times, people have used olives to make
 a petrol b water c cola d oil
- My brother and I have a plant, we it every day.
 a water b plant c grow d drink
- In Egypt, people use like basil in cooking.
 a items b herbs c tips d means
- We sit under trees to rest in the
 a water b shade c sun d room

5. Farmers fruits like guavas and figs.

SB

a kill

b burn

c fix

d grow

6. I out the weeds from the garden every morning.

SB

a pull

b make

c check

d put

7. Every morning, I for insects on the plants.

a kill

b make

c take

d check

8. We help my grandpa for the plants in his garden.

SB

a good

b take

c care

d eat

9. The farmer uses natural to help his plants grow well.

a gas

b fertilizer

c bag

d basket

10. My grandpa removes the from his garden.

a flowers

b trees

c weeds

d fruits

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. all - makes - tea - the time - Mom - hibiscus.

2. fruit - is - and - sweet - healthy - Their.

3. garden - Your - incredible - looks.

4. time - take - Olives - to grow.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Grandpa your garden looks incredible

2. do Egyptians really grow olives

★ How's the weather in your city?

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



weather	الطقس	protect	يحمي
shade	ظل	windy	شديد الرياح / عاصف
wave	موجة	wet	مبتل / رطب
sunglasses	نظارة شمسية	warm	دافئ
rainy	ممطر	sunny	شمس

Other words كلمات أخرى

wind	الرياح	strong	قوى / شديد
sky	السماء	heat	حرارة
cloud	سحابة	outdoors	بالخارج / خارج المنزل
dust	غبار	different	مختلف
clear	صافي	indoors	في الداخل

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

from one place to another	من مكان إلى آخرى	in the street	في الشارع
What is the weather like? ما حالة الطقس؟		protect from	يحمي من
do homework يؤدي الواجب المدرسي		lots of	كثير من
take care of يعتني به		sit in the shade	يجلس في الظل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماض

Present مضارع

Past ماض

stay	يبقى
move	يتنقل
close	ينغلق / يغلق
protect	يحمي
rest	يستريح

stayed
moved
closed
protected
rested

wear	يرتدي
fly	يطير
sit	يجلس
tell	يخبر
see	يرى
drink	يشرب
take care	يعتني

wore
flew
sat
told
saw
drank
took care

Language notes

1 weather - climate

weather:

الطقس: حالة الجو لفترة زمنية قصيرة قد تصل إلى أسبوع

- What is the **weather** like tomorrow?

climate:

المناخ: حالة الجو لفترة زمنية طويلة قد تصل إلى فصل

- The **climate** of Egypt is nice.

2 sunglasses:

نظارة شمسية: كلمة جمع دائماً

- Your **sunglasses** are beautiful.

Study the following

1 The weather is very different from one place to another.

يختلف الطقس اختلافاً كبيراً من مكان لآخر.

2 In Alexandria, it's windy and rainy.

في الإسكندرية، الجو عاصف وممطر.

3 The sky is full of dark clouds and the waves are high.

السماء مليئة بالسحب الداكنة والأمواج عالية.

4 People are staying indoors because it's cold and the streets are wet.

يبقى الناس في منازلهم لأن الجو بارد والشوارع مبللة.

5 In Cairo, the weather is warm and sunny.

في القاهرة، الجو دافئ ومشمس.

6 Some students are doing their homework outdoors.

بعض الطلاب يؤديون واجباتهم المدرسية في الهواء الطلق.

7 I can see birds flying in the clear sky.

أرى الطيور تطير في السماء الصافية.

8 In Aswan, it is hot.

في أسوان، الجو حار.

9 The sun is very strong, and the sky is clear.

الشمس قوية جداً والسماء صافية.

10 People drink lots of water, wear hats and sunglasses, and sit in the shade to protect themselves from the sun.

يشرب الناس الكثير من الماء، ويرتدون القبعات والنظارات الشمسية، ويجلسون في الظل لحماية أنفسهم من الشمس.

11 Egyptians are checking the weather to help people take care of their homes and plants.

يتابع المصريون حالة الطقس لمساعدة الناس على العناية بمنازلهم ونباتاتهم.

12 What is the weather like in your city?

كيف هو الطقس في مدينتك؟

How's The Weather In Your City?

استمع إلى النص:



Read the text. What is the weather like in Egypt today?

اقرأ النص. ما حالة الطقس في مصر اليوم؟



New Message

To john@yahoo.com
From youssef@gmail.com
Subject Weather in Egypt.

Cc Bcc

Hi John,

I How are you? I want to tell you about the **weather**⁽¹⁾ in Egypt today. It is very different from one place to another.

In Alexandria, it's **windy**⁽²⁾ and **rainy**⁽³⁾. The sky is full of dark clouds and the waves are high.

People are staying indoors because it's cold and the streets are **wet**⁽⁴⁾.

Some shops are closing early.

In Cairo, the weather is **warm**⁽⁵⁾ and **sunny**⁽⁶⁾. People are walking in the streets.

Children are playing in the parks. Some students are doing their homework **outdoors**⁽⁷⁾. I can see birds flying in the clear sky.

In Aswan, it is hot. The sun is very strong, and the sky is clear. Farmers water their plants early in the morning. People drink lots of water, wear hats and sunglasses, and sit in the **shade**⁽⁸⁾ to protect themselves from the sun.

Now, Egyptians are checking the weather to help people take care of their homes and plants. What is the weather like in your city?

Write back soon.

Your friend,

مرحباً جون، كيف حالك؟ أريد أن أخبرك عن طقس مصر اليوم. إنه مختلف تماماً من مكان لآخر. في الإسكندرية، الجو عاصف وممطر. السماء مليئة بالغيوم الداكنة والأمواج عالية. يبقى الناس في منازلهم لأن الجو بارد والشوارع مبللة. بعض المتاجر تعلق مبكراً. في القاهرة، الجو دافئ ومشمس. الناس يتجولون في الشوارع. الأطفال يلعبون في الحدائق. بعض الطلاب يزدون واجباتهم المدرسية في الهواء الطلق. أستطيع رؤية الطيور تحلق في السماء الصافية. في أسوان، الجو حار. الشمس قوية جداً والسماء صافية. يسقي المزارعون نباتاتهم في الصباح الباكر. يشرب الناس الكثير من الماء، ويرتدون قبعات ونظارات شمسية، ويجلسون في الظل لحماية أنفسهم من الشمس. الآن، يتابع المصريون حالة الطقس لمساعدة الناس على العناية بمنازلهم ونباتاتهم. كيف هو الطقس في مدينتك؟ أرسلنا قريباً، صديقك يوسف.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- الطقس
- ٢- شديد الرياح
- ٣- ممطر
- ٤- مبلل
- ٥- دافئ
- ٦- مشمس
- ٧- بالخارج
- ٨- ظل



Send



Language in use

ملاحظات لغوية

Present Continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

Form

التكوين



Usage

الاستخدام

● يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام).

Ex: Ahmed is playing now.

● يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر عن حالة وصف الصورة.

Ex: In picture (1), he is pulling out weeds.

- ملاحظات عند إضافة ing:

١- يحدف حرف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) مثل،

make → making

write → writing

- لاحظ أن حرف (e) هنا غير منطوق.

٢- لا يحدف حرف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) مثل،

see → seeing

be → being

- لاحظ أن حرف (e) هنا منطوق.

٣- الفعل المنتهي بـ (ie) يحول إلى (y) ثم نضيف (ing) :

die → dying

lie → lying

٤- نضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال:

cut → cutting

run → running

Negative

النفى

عند نفي زمن المضارع المستمر نضع (not) بعد am - is - are :

- They are not playing in the garden.

Question السؤال

وعند عمل سؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر نقدم **Am - Is - Are** على الفاعل:

🕒 وعند عمل سؤال بأداة الاستفهام تستخدم القاعدة الآتية:

تكملة الجملة + ing + الفعل + الفاعل + am - is - are + (أداة الاستفهام)

- Are you watching TV now?

Yes, I am. No, I am not.

- What is he doing now?

He is eating lunch.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

now	الآن	Look!	انظر!	Listen!	استمع!
at the present time	في الوقت الحاضر	this weekend	هذه العطلة	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة

Checkup Exercises ✓

Read and write the correct form of the words

1. Mesk (be) sleeping now.
2. Ali and I (be) playing at the moment.
3. We are (study) now.
4. Look! They (draw) a picture.
5. We (be not) eating at present.
6. Are you (do) your homework?
7. What (do) she doing now?
8. Is she writing her homework? Yes, she (does).

Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. The sun is shining in

- a** Aswan **b** Alexandria **c** Cairo **d** Zagazig

2. Children are playing in the

- a** streets **b** beaches **c** parks **d** gardens

3. In Cairo, the weather is

- a** cold **b** warm **c** cool **d** hot

4. The waves are crashing on the

- a** beach **b** shore **c** coast **d** road

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. When it's hot, people drink water and rest in the

- a** shade **b** street **c** heat **d** dust

SB

2. The streets are because it is raining heavily.

- a** dry **b** wet **c** dusty **d** hot

SB

3. We wear hats to ourselves from the sun.

- a** heat **b** clean **c** grow **d** protect

SB

4. Some people like to check the before they go outdoors to know if it is hot or cold.

- a** shops **b** beach **c** plants **d** weather

SB

5. You need to wear when the sun is strong.

- a** skirts **b** sunglasses **c** gloves **d** boots

6. In Alex, you can see high in the sea.

- a** waves **b** trees **c** birds **d** stones

7. The weather is and windy so I will take my umbrella.

- a** rainy **b** cool **c** fine **d** dry

8. I love spring because it's warm and

- a** rainy **b** sunny **c** wet **d** sun

Unit 2 Our Nature

9. I don't like to stay home on Friday. I play with my friends

a indoors

b inside

c outdoors

d doors

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

stars - sunglasses - shade - clouds

On the beach, the weather is fine. The sky is full of ❶ I am reading a story in the ❷ My children are making a sandcastle. My friend is wearing a hat and ❸

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Omar, and I live in Egypt. Today, I want to tell you about the weather in three cities. In Alexandria, it is windy and rainy. The streets are wet, and people are staying at home because it is cold. Some shops are closing early. In Cairo, the weather is sunny and warm. Children are playing in the park, and students are doing their homework outside. The sky is clear. In Aswan, it is very hot. The sun is strong, so people drink water, wear hats, and stay in the shade. Farmers water their plants early in the morning. The weather is different in each place. People check the weather to plan their day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar says the weather in Alexandria is

a hot and dry

b sunny and warm

c windy and rainy

d cold and snowy

2. In Aswan, people wear hats and drink water because the weather is

a cold

b rainy

c hot

d windy

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the weather like in Cairo?

4. Why do people in Aswan stay in the shade?

5. Who is telling us about the weather in Egypt?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Maged (**play**) tennis in the club now. SB
2. Are you (**eat**) your lunch at the moment? SB
3. I (**not wear**) my jacket today. It's hot. SB
4. My friend and I (**visit**) London now. SB
5. Eman (**sleep**) now. She is reading a story.
6. Are you reading a story now? Yes, I (**are**).
7. In picture (1), my son (**fly**) a kite.
8. Asmaa is doing her homework (**then**).
9. What are the boys (**do**) now?
10. Yes, we (**aren't**) eating fish now.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. ali is writing a paragraph now

2. Are you visiting ola tomorrow

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Weather in Egypt

different from city to city - warm and cool - like cold weather

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



crocodile
kingfisher
the Nile
flow

تمساح
طائر الرفراف
النيل
يتدفق

tilapia
flood
temple

سمك البلطي
فيضان أو فيض أو ينهمر
معبد

Other words

كلمات أخرى

the desert
country
animals
Nile perch
birds
heron
duck
soil

الصحراء
دولة
حيوانات
سمكة البياض أو الفرخ النيلي
طيور
طائر البلسون أو مالك الحزين
بطة
تربة زراعية

wheat
vegetables
boat
Ancient Egyptians
Egyptian people
the longest
dangerous
special

قمح
خضروات
قارب
المصريون القدماء
المصريون
الاطول
خطير
خاص أو مميز

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

in the world

في العالم

important for

مهم لـ

6,650 kilometers long

يبلغ طوله ٦,٦٥٠ كيلومتر

in the past

في الماضي

flow through = go through

يتدفق من خلال

provide (sb) with (sth)

يمد / يوفر بـ

from south to north

من الجنوب إلى الشمال

travel in boats

يسافر بالقوارب

bring life to

يجلب الحياة لـ

depend on

يعتمد علي

in and near the Nile

في أو بالقرب من النهر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
flow يتدفق	flowed	grow يزرع	grew
flood يفيض / يهمر	flooded	swim يسبح	swam
travel يسافر	traveled	think يفكر	thought
provide يمد	provided	build يبني	built
depend يعتمد	depended	find يجد	found
		bring يجلب / يحضر	brought

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

a fish \ fish \ fish \ fishes

A fish:

(سمكة (اسم مفرد يعد)

- I catch **a fish** every day.

Fish:

(سمك اسم جمع من نفس النوع)

- I caught many **fish** yesterday.

Fish:

لحم سمك (اسم مفرد لا يعد)

- I eat **fish** every week.

Fishes:

(سمك اسم جمع انواع مختلف)

- This shop sells many different **fishes**.

Study the following

- 1 The Nile is the longest river in the world. النيل هو أطول نهر في العالم.
- 2 The Nile flows through Egypt from south to north. يمر النيل بمصر من الجنوب الى الشمال.
- 3 Many animals live in and near the Nile. تعيش العديد من الحيوانات في او بالقرب من النيل.
- 4 Crocodiles are dangerous animals. التماسيح حيوانات خطيرة.
- 5 Many birds come to the river to drink and find food. تأتي العديد من الطيور الى النهر لتشرب وتبحث عن الطعام.
- 6 The Nile is very important for Egyptian people. النيل مهم جدا للشعب المصري.
- 7 The Nile provides people and animals with water to drink. يزود النيل الناس والحيوانات بالماء للشرب.
- 8 Many people still depend on the Nile for their jobs and food. مازال الكثير من الناس يعتمدون علي النيل في وظائفهم وطعامهم.

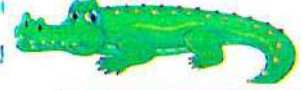


Reading



The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is about 6,650 kilometers long. The Nile **flows through**⁽¹⁾ Egypt from south to north. It goes through the desert and brings life to the country.

النيل هو أطول نهر في العالم. طوله حوالي ٦,٦٥٠ كيلومترًا. يمر النيل عبر مصر من الجنوب إلى الشمال. يجتاز الصحراء ويجلب الحياة للبلد.



Many animals live in and near the Nile. Big fish like Nile **perch**⁽²⁾ and **tilapia**⁽³⁾ swim in the water. Crocodiles live in the river too. They are dangerous animals. Many birds come to the river to drink and find food. You can see **kingfishers**⁽⁴⁾, **herons**⁽⁵⁾, and ducks near the Nile.

تعيش كثير من الحيوانات في النيل و بالقرب منه. تصبح أسماك كبيرة مثل البيرش و السمك البيلطي في المياه. تعيش التماسيح في النهر كذلك. أنها حيوانات خطيرة. تأتي كثير من الطيور للنهر لتشرب و تبحث عن الطعام. يمكنك ان ترى طائر الرفراف والبشونات و البط بالقرب من النهر.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- يتدفق خلال
- ٢- سمكة البياض
- ٣- سمكة البيلطي
- ٤- طائر الرفراف
- ٥- طائر البشون
- ٦- فاض/انهمر
- ٧- خاص/مميز
- ٨- معابد
- ٩- يعتمد علي

The Nile is very important for Egyptian people. In the past, the river **flooded**⁽⁶⁾ and brought good soil. Farmers used this soil to grow food like wheat and vegetables. The Nile provides people and animals with water to drink. People also use the river to travel in boats.

النيل مهم جدًا للشعب المصري. في الماضي، فيض النهر جلب تربة جيدة. استخدمها الفلاحون لزراعة الغناء كالقمح و الخضروات. يزود النيل الناس و الحيوانات بالماء للشرب. كما يستخدم الناس النهر للسفر بالقوارب.

The Ancient Egyptians thought the Nile was **special**⁽⁷⁾. They built **temples**⁽⁸⁾ near the river. Today, many people still **depend on**⁽⁹⁾ the Nile for their jobs and food.

كان المصريون القدماء يعتبرون النيل مميزًا. بنوا معابد قرب النهر. اليوم، كثير من الناس لا يزالون يعتمدون على النيل في وظائفهم و طعامهم.



Pronunciation

Pronounce the /e/ sound by opening your mouth slightly and keeping your tongue low-mid and front. This vowel sound is heard in words like "ten" /ten/, "hen" /hen/, and "bed" /bed/.

انطق صوت /e/ بفتح فمك قليلاً مع إبقاء لسانك منخفضاً في منتصف الجزء الامامي من الفم. يُسمع هذا الصوت المتحرك في كلمات مثل "ten" /ten/، و"hen" /hen/، و"bed" /bed/.

Pronounce the short "i" sound Keep your tongue high but slightly lower than for /I/, with relaxed lips and jaw. The tongue tip rests just behind the bottom front teeth like in the words (sit, bit, in)

لنطق الصوت القصير "i" أبقي لسانك مرتفعاً ولكن منخفضاً قليلاً، مع استرخاء الشفتين والفاك. يستقر طرف اللسان خلف الأسنان الأمامية السفلية مباشرة كما في كلمات (sit, bit, in).

/e/ words



desk

مكتب



net

شبكة



shelf

رف



present

هدية

/i/ words



pick

يقطف



pin

دبوس



mint

نعناع

/e/		/i/	
bed	سرير	window	شباك
hen	دجاجة	milk	لبن
ten	عشرة	village	قرية
clever	ماهر	sit	يجلس
red	لون احمر	in	في
fence	سور	bit	كسرة من شيء
		swim	يعوم
		insect	حشرة

1 Listen and circle the words that has the /I/ sound:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمات التي تحتوى على الصوت /I/

1. window - shelf - clever

2. red - bed - milk

3. fence - village - desk

2 Read the sentences and write the correct sound of the word in bold:

اقرأ الجمل واكتب الصوت الذى تمثله الكلمات المكتوبة بخط ثقيل

1. Sea turtles **swim** in the warm Red Sea.

2. The ibis eats small animals like **insects** and fish.

3. Grandpa grows herbs like **mint** and parsley.

4. Hibiscus flowers grow near the **fence**.

Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- The Nile flows through the
 a forest b mountain c desert d village
- Farmers use the Nile's water to food.
 a eat b grow c cook d wash
- live near the Nile, like crocodiles and birds.
 a Machines b Animals c Cars d Buildings
- In the past, people built near the Nile.
 a shops b schools c temples d roads

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

أختار الإجابة الصحيحة :

- The is very important for our lives. SB
 a Desk b Nile c Desert d Sand
- live in the Nile and they are very dangerous. SB
 a Pens b Birds c Cats d Crocodiles
- Farmers grow like wheat and vegetables. SB
 a food b fruit c meat d animals
- The river every year and brought good soil. SB
 a rained b killed c flooded d watched
- In the past, Ancient Egyptians built near the Nile. SB
 a schools b temples c parks d gardens
- The Nile through Egypt from south to north. SB
 a flows b reads c writes d flies
- We can see and ducks near the Nile.
 a horses b kingfishers c rugs d ants

Unit 2 Our Nature

8. Big fish like the Nile perch and swim in the water of the Nile.

- a** flower **b** tree **c** lizard **d** tilapia

9. The Nile is the river in the world.

- a** shortest **b** longest **c** quickest **d** fastest

10. Today, many people still on the Nile for their jobs and food.

- a** stand **b** build **c** depend **d** sleep

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The Nile River is the longest river in the world. It flows for about 6,650 kilometres from the south to north. In ancient Egypt, the Nile was very important for growing plants. Farmers used its water to grow wheat, rice, and vegetables. The river made the land rich and full of life.

Today, the Nile is still important for Egyptians. Fishermen depend on it to catch fish like tilapia and Nile perch. It also gives water for drinking and farming. Many birds live near the Nile, such as the kingfisher, which dives into the water to catch small fish. The Nile brings life to Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about

- a** the Nile **b** the Desert **c** the world **d** the sky

2. Tilapia is a kind of

- a** bird **b** fish **c** fruit **d** vegetables

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is the Nile important for farmers?

4. How long is the Nile?

5. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. Nile - important - is - The - Egyptian - for - people.

2. dangerous - are - animals - They - very.

3. flows - The Nile - Egypt - through.

4. to drink - birds - come - Many - to the river.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. The Ancient Egyptians thought the Nile was special.

2. what do you know about the Nile

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (50) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

The Nile River

1. longest river in the world.
2. many animals live in and near
3. important for

★ Unforgettable Trip to Wadi El Rayan

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



sand dunes	كثبان رملية	rare	نادر
guide	مرشد	skeleton	عمود فقري
history	تاريخ	exhibit	معرض
fossil	حفريّة	tucked	مخبأ / مدمسوسا
waterfall	شلال		

Other words

كلمات أخرى

trip	رحلة قصيرة	Wadi El-Hitan = Valley of the whales	
luck	حظ		وادي الحيتان
National Park	حديقة وطنية	Wadi El Rayan	وادي الريان
science teacher	مدرس علوم	unforgettable	لا ينسى
wooden bench	مقعد خشبي	real	حقيقي
green farms	مزارع خضراء	ancient	قديم
camel	جمل	kind	طيب / عطوف
palm trees	أشجار النخيل	everywhere	في كل مكان
scientists	علماء	thankfully	لحسن الحظ
whale bones	عظام الحوت	skimming	التصفح

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

for two hours	لمدة ساعتين	named	اسمه
on the way	في الطريق	called	يسمى / يُدعى
in the distance	من على بُعد	on a school trip	في رحلة مدرسية

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

organize	ينظم
arrive	يصل
explain	يشرح
protect	يحمي
realize	يدرك
tuck	يدس / يخبئ

Past ماض

organized
arrived
explained
protected
realized
tucked

Present مضارع

leave	يفادر
ride	يركب
show	يوضح

Past ماض

left
rode
showed

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 Not only ... but also

تستخدم **Not only ... but also** (ليس فقط ... بل أيضاً) لربط فكرتين أو فعلين أو صفتين متساويتين في الأهمية

- Mr. Badr helps **not only** Hana **but also** Karim.

2 trip / journey

trip: رحلة قصيرة أو محددة (عمل) **journey**: رحلة طويلة أو رحلة صعبة (متعبة)

- We went on a school **trip** to the zoo.
- The **journey** across the desert was hard.

Study the following

- 1 Our school organized a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum.
نظمت مدرستنا رحلة إلى منتزه وادي الريان الوطني في الفيوم.
- 2 We left school early and rode the bus for two hours.
غادرنا المدرسة مبكراً وركبنا الأتوبيس لمدة ساعتين.
- 3 The guide showed us the lakes, the waterfalls and the palm trees.
أرانا المرشد البحيرات والشلالات وأشجار النخيل.
- 4 Wadi El-Hitan was covered by sea.
وادي الحيتان كان مغطى بالبحر.
- 5 Scientists found the skeletons of ancient whales there.
وجد العلماء هياكل عظيمة لحيتان قديمة هناك.

Unit 2 Our Nature

6 I want to take a picture of the skeletons with my camera.

أردت أن أصور الهياكل العظمية بالكاميرا الخاص بي.

7 I looked everywhere with no luck.

بحثت في كل مكان دون جدوى.

8 That trip was full of nature, history and fun with friends.

كانت الرحلة مليئة بالطبيعة والتاريخ والمرح مع الأصدقاء.

Think and answer.

Reading



استمع إلى النص:



Last Thursday, our school **organized**⁽¹⁾ a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum. Our class teacher, Miss Salma, and science teacher, Mr. Ahmed, came with us. We left school early and rode the bus for two hours.

يوم الخميس الماضي. نظمت مدرستنا رحلة إلى حديقة وادي الريان الوطنية في الفيوم. كانت معنا معلمة الصف الأتسة سلمي ومعلم العلوم الأستاذ أحمد. غادرتنا المدرسة باكراً وركبنا الحافلة لمدة ساعتين.

On the way, we saw green farms, **sand dunes**⁽²⁾, and camels walking **in the distance**⁽³⁾. When we arrived, a kind guide named Mr. Tarek showed us the lakes, the **waterfalls**⁽⁴⁾, and the palm trees. He explained that Wadi El Rayan is not only beautiful, but it also protects **rare**⁽⁵⁾ animals and plants.

في الطريق، رأينا مزارع خضراء، وكتبان رملية، وجمال تمشي في الأفق. عند وصولنا، أرشدنا مرشد لطيف اسمه السيد طارق إلى البحيرات والتلال وأشجار النخيل. شرح لنا أن وادي الريان ليس جميلاً فقط، بل يحمي أيضاً حيوانات ونباتات نادرة.

After lunch, we took another short trip into the desert-to a place called Wadi El-Hitan, or **Valley of the Whales**⁽⁶⁾. This place was covered by sea. Scientists found the **skeletons**⁽⁷⁾ of ancient whales there. We saw real whale bones in the sand and even a **fossil**⁽⁸⁾ museum!

بعد الغداء، أخذنا رحلة قصيرة أخرى إلى الصحراء إلى مكان يسمى وادي الحيتان. كان هذا المكان مغطى بالبحر قديماً. وجد العلماء هياكل عظمية لحيتان قديمة هناك. شاهدنا عظام حيتان حقيقية في الرمال ومتحف للحفريات.

I wanted to take a picture of the skeletons with my camera when I realized that it wasn't with me. I looked everywhere with no luck. **Thankfully**⁽⁹⁾, Mr. Ahmed found it **tucked**⁽¹⁰⁾ under a wooden bench **outside**⁽¹¹⁾ the exhibit just before we left that area.

أردت أن أصور الهياكل العظمية بالكاميرا، لكنني اكتشفت أنني نسيت الكاميرا. بحثت في كل مكان دون جدوى. لحسن الحظ، وجدها السيد أحمد مخبأة تحت مقعد خشبي خارج المعرض قبل أن نغادر المنطقة.

That trip was full of nature, history, and fun with friends.

كانت الرحلة مليئة بالطبيعة والتاريخ والمرح مع الأصدقاء.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- نظمت
- ٢- كتبان رملية
- ٣- من على بعد
- ٤- شلالات
- ٥- نادر
- ٦- وادي الحيتان
- ٧- هياكل عظمية
- ٨- حفريّة
- ٩- لحسن الحظ
- ١٠- مخبأه
- ١١- معرض

Writing skill



مهارة القراءة

Here are some steps for writing a story

إليك بعض الخطوات لكتابة قصة

- Tell when and where the story takes place. • حدّد متى وأين تدور أحداث القصة.
- Say who is in the story (people, animals, etc.). • اذكر من هم في القصة (أشخاص، حيوانات، إلخ).
- Write what happens using (first, next, and finally). • اكتب ما حدث باستخدام (أولاً، ثم، أخيراً).
- Include a problem and a solution. • تضمّن مشكلة وحل.
- Use past simple tense. • استخدم الزمن الماضي البسيط.
- Add interesting details. • أضف تفاصيل شيقة.
- Finish with an ending. • أنه القصة بنهاية.

مثال توضيحي

Last Saturday, I went to the beach with my family. **First**, we swam in the sea. **Then**, my little brother lost his toy. We looked everywhere and **finally** found it under a towel. **After that**, we built a sandcastle. It was a great day at the beach!

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة ،

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. At, the wind blew hard.

- ☐ a dinner ☐ b supper ☐ c breakfast ☐ d lunch

2. The wind carried our things.

- ☐ a from ☐ b away ☐ c to ☐ d into

3. I picked up a small and kept it in my notebook.

- ☐ a rock ☐ b book ☐ c stone ☐ d look

4. Sand got into my

- ☐ a eye ☐ b car ☐ c sandwich ☐ d name

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة ،

1. We followed the to learn more about the ancient temple.

- ☐ a singer ☐ b doctor ☐ c guide ☐ d farmer

2. I looked for my keys and finally. I found them under the chair.

- ☐ a heavy ☐ b noisy ☐ c tucked ☐ d broken

3. The bones of the human body are called a

- ☐ a muscle ☐ b skeleton ☐ c skin ☐ d heart

4. We can see old of dinosaurs in the museum.

- ☐ a fossils ☐ b books ☐ c toys ☐ d clothes

5. In class, we learn about the Pyramids and old kings.

- ☐ a math ☐ b history ☐ c science ☐ d music

6. The wind made big in the desert.

- ☐ a sand dunes ☐ b social media ☐ c trees ☐ d traffic jam

7. We must protect this area because manyanimals and plants live there.

a organized

b rare

c early

d covered

8. We saw beautiful paintings at theyesterday.

a exhibit

b cinema

c skeleton

d fossil

9. We visited thein Fayoum and enjoyed the view of falling water.

a desert

b sand

c waterfalls

d skeleton

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

SB

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rock - journey - history - waterfalls

Last Thursday, our class went on a school trip to Wadi El Rayan. We saw lakes, ① and desert animals like a fennec fox later. The trip was full of ② and fun, and I brought home a small ③

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم ثلاثي:

1. what did you do

2. last thursday, our school went on a school trip.

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A short story about visiting a new place

Say who is in the story.

Tell when and where the story takes place.

Review

on Unit 2



natural fertilizer

سماد طبيعي



weeds

الحشائش الضارة



basil

الريحان



hibiscus

الكرديه



water

يسقي / يروي



plant

يزرع



pull out

يقتلع / يزيل من الجذر

oil

زيت نباتي

crocodile

تمساح

herbs

أعشاب

kingfisher

طائر الرفراف

shade

ظل

the Nile

النيل

grow

ينمو / يزرع

flow

يتدفق

check for

يتحري الدقة للتأكد من شيء / يفحص

tilapia

سمك البلطي

care for

يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ

flood

فيضان / فيض أو ينهمر

weather

الطقس

temple

معبد

shade

ظل

sand dunes

كثبان رملية

wave

موجة

guide

مرشد

sunglasses

نظارة شمسية

history

تاريخ

rainy

ممطر

fossil

حفريه

protect

يحمي

waterfall

شلال

windy

شديد الرياح / عاصف

rare

نادر

wet

مبتل / رطب

skeleton

عمود فقري

warm

دافئ

exhibit

معرض

sunny

مشمس

tucked

مخبأ / مدموسا

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

relax	يسترخي
taste	مذاقه / يكون له طعم
harm	يضر / يؤذي
move	ينتقل
close	ينغلق / يغلق
protect	يحمي
flow	يتدفق
flood	ينهمر / يفيض
provide	يمد
depend	يعتمد
organize	ينظم
protect	يحمي
tuck	يدس / يخبا

Past ماض

relaxed
tasted
harmed
moved
closed
protected
flowed
flooded
provided
depended
organized
protected
tucked

Present مضارع

keep	يحافظ
grow	يزرع
wear	يرتدي
fly	يطير
sit	يجلس
take care	يعتنى
think	يفكر
build	يبنى
bring	يحضر / يجلب
leave	يغادر
ride	يركب
show	يوضح

Past ماض

kept
grew
wore
flew
sat
took care
thought
built
brought
left
rode
showed

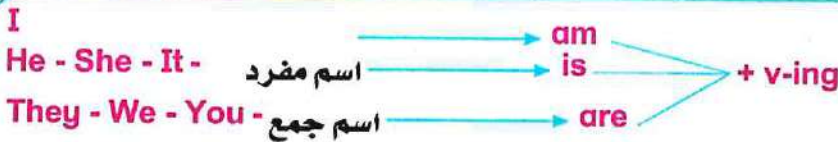
Language in use

ملاحظات لغوية

Present Continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

Form

التكوين



Usage

الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام).

Ex: Ahmed is playing now.

يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر عن حالة وصف الصورة.

Ex: In picture (1), he is pulling out weeds.



- ملاحظات عند إضافة ing :

١- يحذف حرف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) مثل ،

make → making

write → writing

- لاحظ أن حرف (e) هنا غير منطوق .

٢- لا يحذف حرف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) مثل ،

see → seeing

be → being

- لاحظ أن حرف (e) هنا منطوق .

٣- الفعل المنتهي بـ (ie) يحول إلى (y) ثم نضيف (ing) ،

die → dying

lie → lying

٤- نضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال :

cut → cutting

run → running

Negative

النفي

عند نفي زمن المضارع المستمر نضع (not) بعد am - is - are :

- They are not playing in the garden.

Question

السؤال

وعند عمل سؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر نقدم Am - Is - Are على الفاعل :

🔴 وعند عمل سؤال بأداة الاستفهام تستخدم القاعدة الآتية :

تكملة الجملة ing + الفعل + الفاعل + am - is - are + (أداة الاستفهام)

- Are you watching TV now?

Yes, I am. No, I am not.

- What is he doing now?

He is eating lunch.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

now	الآن	Look!	انظر!	Listen!	استمع!
at the present time	في الوقت الحاضر	this weekend	هذه العطلة	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 2

The Weather in Egypt

The weather in Egypt is usually sunny and dry. In summer, it is very hot, especially in Upper Egypt. Winter is cooler in the north. It rarely rains. The sky is often clear. People wear light clothes in summer and warm clothes in winter.

2

Lesson 3

Animal Habitats in Egypt

Egypt has many natural habitats for animals. The desert is home to snakes and foxes. Wetlands and the Nile Delta are good for birds. The Red sea has sea turtles and colorful fish. Each animal lives where it can find food stay safe.

3

Lesson 4

Short story about visiting a new place

Last month, I visited the pyramids with my family. The pyramids are in Giza. They are ancient and big. We learned about ancient kings and took many photos. My little brother loved seeing the camels. At the end, I was very happy and wanted to visit them again!.

4

Al Azhar Test

New Message

To ola3@yahoo.com

Cc Bcc

From aya 55@yahoo.com

Subject My school trip to Wadi El Rayan

Dear ola,

I am happy to write to you. I want to tell you about my school trip to Wadi El Rayan. Last Thursday, our class went to Wadi El Rayan. We saw lakes and waterfalls. We saw the fennec fox run across the desert. It was a great trip.

Best wishes,

Aya

5

Test

Unforgettable trip

Last summer, I went on an unforgettable trip to Alexandria with my family. We visited the library and walked by the sea. The weather in Alexandria was sunny and cool. I ate tasty ice cream and took many photos. It was a fun day I will always remember.

Al-Azhar Test

امتحان خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

clever - sunlight - take - grow - green

Hana and her grandpa are talking about the garden.

Hana : How do you keep the garden ① ----- ?

Grandpa : I ② ----- care of it every day.

Hana : Plants need water and ③ ----- .

Grandpa : They need care to ④ ----- well, too

Hana : You know a lot about farming.

Grandpa : I am a ⑤ ----- farmer.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	playing	sing	sleeping	eating	-----
2	winter	fall	spring	season	-----
3	ate	went	get	got	-----
4	basil	hibiscus	Insect	jasmine	-----
5	Ola	Mona	Ali	Eman	-----

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A panda is a animal. There aren't many of them.

- ☐ a cheap ☐ b normal ☐ c boring ☐ d rare

2. We need to out weeds.

- ☐ a give ☐ b pull ☐ c push ☐ d care

3. The helps our body stand and move.

- ☐ a skeleton ☐ b skin ☐ c brain ☐ d heart

4. The Nile has many types of fish like and Nile perch.

- ☐ a kingfisher ☐ b crocodile ☐ c tilapia ☐ d heron

Unit 2 Our Nature

5. The view from the mountain was
a boring **b** incredible **c** bad **d** easy
6. She..... a picture now.
a draws **b** draw **c** is drawing **d** drawing
7. Look! The boys football.
a played **b** are playing **c** play **d** playing
8. I talking to my friend at the moment.
a was **b** are **c** is **d** am
9. They are doing their homework
a now **b** yesterday **c** age **d** last week
10. What are you?
a wrote **b** write **c** writing **d** are writing

4 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

Good food, exercise and sleep are keys to good health. We need to eat foods that contain proteins, carbohydrates, fats and vitamins. Proteins are found in meat, fish and beans. Bread, rice and macaroni are **rich in** carbohydrates. Milk, cheese and butter contain fats. Vitamins are found in fresh fruits and vegetables. Exercise helps the blood to move around inside the body, carrying the food to all parts of the body. The body must have rest, so we must sleep enough to be able to do our work.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What are the keys to good health?
.....
2. What must you do to be able to do your work?
.....
3. Do you think exercise can be useful? How?
.....

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. The adjective "**rich in**" means
a little **b** full of **c** popular **d** has a lot of money
5. takes food to all parts of the body.
a Beans **b** Blood **c** Bread **d** Butter

Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Farmer are their plants early.

- ☐ a drinking ☐ b sleeping ☐ c watering ☐ d cutting

2. The soil is becoming

- ☐ a try ☐ b dry ☐ c fry ☐ d lie

3. The sky is

- ☐ a clear ☐ b clean ☐ c kill ☐ d mean

4. People are drinking much

- ☐ a milk ☐ b juice ☐ c cola ☐ d water

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. This flower grows only in one place. It is very

- ☐ a tall ☐ b fast ☐ c common ☐ d rare

2. The first day at school was for me. I loved it a lot.

- ☐ a boring ☐ b unforgettable ☐ c cold ☐ d normal

3. The new art opens in our city this week.

- ☐ a garden ☐ b park ☐ c shop ☐ d exhibit

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

items - meals - flavor - herbs

My father is a farmer. He grows ① like basil, mint, and parsley. We use them in many Egyptian ② Some add ③, and other are good for health.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

How amazing is the life of animals? In winter, many animals and birds travel hundreds of kilometres looking for a warmer climate and more food. This journey takes place every year at the same time. It is common to see birds sitting on walls or telephone wires waiting to travel the long distance between the places where they spend their summer and their winter.

Scientists do not know exactly how they find their way to and from their winter homes. Some people believe that birds depend on their senses, including their sense of smell, to help them find the way, some animals and birds travel thousands of kilometres. It is surprising that the blue whale has been known to travel up to 20,000 kilometres.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is about
 a animals b birds c a and b d robots
- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
 a scientists b homes
 c whales d birds and animals

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where do the birds sit waiting to travel the long distance? - - - - -
- How do birds find their way? - - - - -
- Why do you think birds spend winter and summer in different places?
 - - - - -

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة:

- We - green - saw- and - sand dunes - farms
 - - - - -

- trip - was - The - fun - full of.
 - - - - -

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Mona is listening to music and (**runs**) in the park.
- They (**play**) football now.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Aya will travel next monday

2. what did you write ,ali?

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (50) words using the following guiding words:

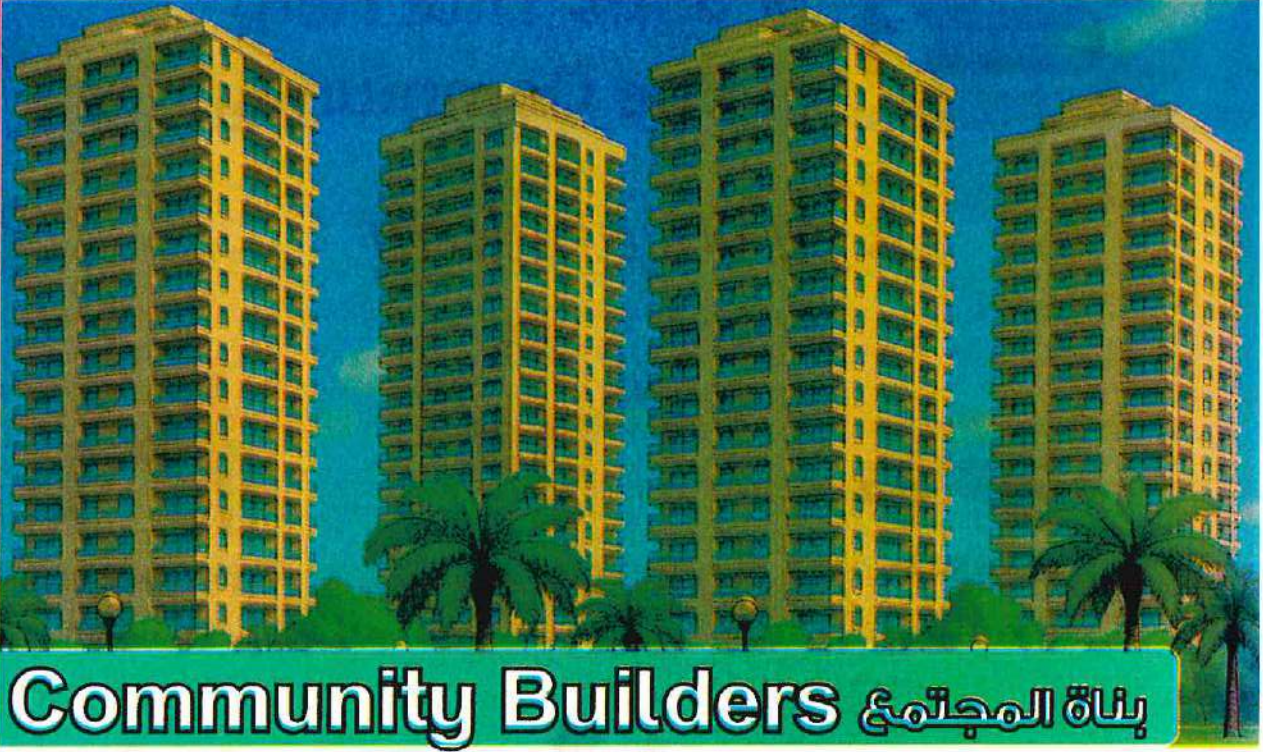
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Unforgettable trip

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Where did you go?

What did you do?



بناء المجتمع Community Builders

Learning Outcomes

Listening:

- Identify features of different jobs needed in the community.
يحدد الطالب سمات الوظائف المختلفة المطلوبة في المجتمع.
- Follow conversations about helping the community.
يتابع الطالب الحوارات حول مساعدة المجتمع.
- Recognize two and three syllable words with long sounds.
يتعرف الطالب على الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين وثلاثة مقاطع صوتية ذات أصوات ممتدة.

Speaking:

- Describe jobs that help build a community.
يصف الطالب الوظائف التي تساهم في بناء مجتمع.
- Talk about ability and permission using can/can't/able to.
يتحدث الطالب عن القدرة والاستئذان باستخدام كلمات مثل، يستطيع / لا يستطيع / قادر على.

Reading:

- Identify key vocabulary in reading texts.
يحدد الطالب المفردات الرئيسية في نصوص القراءة.
- Identify the moral and characters of a fictional story.
يحدد الطالب الدرس المستفاد والشخصيات في قصة خيالية.
- Recognize elements and specific details in a biography.
يتعرف الطالب على عناصر وتفاصيل محددة في سيرة ذاتية.

Writing:

- Write a biography of a famous Egyptian person.
يكتب الطالب سيرة ذاتية لشخصية مصرية مشهورة.
- Create a poster identifying and solving a community problem.
يصمم الطالب ملصق يُحدد مشكلة مجتمعية ويُحلها.

Lesson

1

★ Jobs That Help The Community

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



paramedic مسعف



architect مهندس معماري



water resources engineer مهندس موارد مائية



mechanic ميكانيكي



tailor ترزي / خياط



delivery person موظف توصيل



street cleaner عامل نظافة الشارع



traffic officer ضابط مرور

Other words كلمات أخرى

research

يجري بحثاً

brave

شجاع

vehicle

مركبة

control

يتحكم في

emergency

حالة طوارئ

community

مجتمع

list

قائمة

lives

أرواح

Adjectives

صفات

fun	ممتع	different	مختلف
cool	رائع	safe	آمن
important	مهم	clean	نظيف

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

that sounds fun!	يبدو ممتعاً!	one day, we can all do something...	يومًا ما، يمكننا جميعًا أن نفعل شيئًا ...
make a list	يعد قائمة	every job matters .	كل وظيفة مهمة.
great idea.	فكرة رائعة.	doing research	يعمل بحث
make sure	يتأكد	fixes clothes for people	يصلح الملابس للناس
save lives	ينقذ الأرواح		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
work يعمل	worked	do يفعل	did
clean ينظف	cleaned	make يصنع / يجعل	made
help يساعد	helped	get يحصل على	got
fix يصلح	fixed	bring يحضر	brought
		say يقول	said

Definitions

تعريفات

1. community المجتمع	A group of people who live or work together in the same place مجموعة من الناس يعيشون أو يعملون معًا في نفس المكان.
2. research يبحث	To look for information to learn more about something البحث عن معلومات للتعلم أو الفهم بشكل أعمق

Unit 3 Community Builders

3. vehicles	مركبات	Things that people use to travel, like cars, buses, and bikes. وسائل يستخدمها الناس للتنقل، مثل السيارات والحافلات والدراجات
4. emergency	حالة طوارئ	a sudden, dangerous situation that needs quick help موقف مفاجئ وخطير يتطلب مساعدة سريعة
5. brave	شجاع	Not afraid to do something difficult or scary. لا يخاف من فعل شيء صعب أو مخيف
6. control	يتحكم	Make something happen or stop. يجعل شيئاً يحدث أو يمنع من الحدوث

Study the following

- 1 What are you doing? ماذا تفعل؟
- 2 I'm doing research about jobs that help our community. اعمل بحثاً عن وظائف تُفيد مجتمعنا.
- 3 I want to make a list of jobs and how they help the community. أريد أن أعد قائمة بالوظائف وكيف تُفيد المجتمع.
- 4 I want to be a water resources engineer. أريد أن أصبح مهندس موارد مائية.
- 5 What do water resources engineers do? ماذا يفعل مهندسو موارد المياه؟
- 6 They make sure we get clean water in our homes and schools.. يتأكدون من حصولنا على مياه نظيفة في منازلنا ومدارسنا.
- 7 That's a very important job! هذه وظيفة مهمة جداً!
- 8 Traffic officers help people cross the road and control cars. يساعد ضباط المرور الناس على عبور الطريق ويراقبوا السيارات.
- 9 Street cleaners clean the streets and help keep the city beautiful. عمال النظافة ينظفون الشوارع ويساعدون في الحفاظ على جمال المدينة.
- 10 A delivery person brings packages and food to homes. يحضر موظف التوصيل الطرود والطعام إلى المنازل.
- 11 A tailor makes clothes and fixes old ones. الخياط يصنع الملابس ويصلح القديمة منها.
- 12 These jobs are different, but they all help people. هذه الوظائف مختلفة، لكنها جميعاً تساعد الناس.
- 13 Yes, every job matters. نعم، كل وظيفة مهمة.
- 14 We can all do something to help our community. يمكننا جميعاً أن نفعل شيئاً لمساعدة مجتمعنا.



Tape Script



Arabic Meaning

- ١- بحث
٢- مركبات
٣- مهم
٤- مسعف
٥- ينقذ
٦- يتحكم
٧- طرود

Omar : Hi, Youssef! Hi, Salma! عمر: مرحباً، يوسف! مرحباً، سلمى!

Youssef : Hey, Omar! What are you doing? يوسف: أهلاً، عمر! ماذا تفعل؟

Omar : I'm doing **research**⁽¹⁾ about jobs that help our community. عمر: أقوم ببحث عن الوظائف التي تساعد مجتمعنا.

Salma : That sounds fun! Can we help? سلمى: يبدو ممتعاً! هل يمكننا مساعدتك؟

Omar : Sure! I want to make a list of jobs and how they help the community. عمر: بالتأكيد! أريد إعداد قائمة بالوظائف وكيفية مساعدتها للمجتمع.

Youssef : Great idea. I want to be a mechanic. يوسف: فكرة رائعة. أريد أن أصبح ميكانيكياً.

Salma : Why a mechanic? سلمى: لماذا ميكانيكي؟

Youssef : Because mechanics fix **vehicles**⁽²⁾, and I like fixing things. يوسف: لأنهم يصلحون المركبات، وأنا أحب إصلاح الأشياء.

Omar : That's cool! I want to be a water resources engineer. عمر: هذا رائع! أنا أريد أن أكون مهندساً في الموارد المائية.

Salma : What do water resources engineers do? سلمى: ماذا يفعل مهندسو الموارد المائية؟

Omar : They make sure we get clean water in our homes and schools. عمر: يحرصون على أن نحصل على مياه نظيفة في منازلنا ومدارسنا.

Youssef : That's a very **important**⁽³⁾ job! يوسف: هذه وظيفة مهمة جداً!

Salma : I want to be a **paramedic**⁽⁴⁾. They help people in emergencies. سلمى: أنا أريد أن أكون مُسعفة. إنهم يساعدون الناس في حالات الطوارئ.

Omar : That's a brave job. You'll help **save**⁽⁵⁾ lives. عمر: إنها وظيفة شجاعة. ستساعدني في إنقاذ الأرواح.

Youssef : I also like the job of a traffic officer. يوسف: أنا أيضاً أحب وظيفة شرطي المرور.

Salma : Me, too. They help people cross the road and **control**⁽⁶⁾ cars. سلمى: وأنا كذلك. فهم يساعدون الناس على عبور الطريق ويتحكمون في حركة السيارات.

Omar : What about a street cleaner? عمر: ماذا عن عامل النظافة؟

Salma : They clean the streets and help keep the city beautiful. سلمى: إنهم ينظفون الشوارع ويساهمون في جعل المدينة جميلة.

Youssef : My cousin is a delivery person. He brings **packages**⁽⁷⁾ and food to homes. يوسف: ابن عمي يعمل في التوصيل. إنه يوصل الطرود والطعام إلى المنازل.

Salma : My uncle is a tailor. He makes clothes and fixes old ones. سلمى: عمي خياط. يصنع الملابس ويصلح القديمة منها.

Omar : These jobs are different, but they all help people. عمر: هذه الوظائف مختلفة، لكنها جميعاً تساعد الناس.

Salma : Yes, every job matters. سلمى: نعم، كل وظيفة لها أهميتها.

Youssef : One day, we can all do something to help our community. يوسف: يوماً ما، يمكن لكل واحد منا أن يفعل شيئاً لمساعدة المجتمع.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Ahmed wants to be a
☐ a teacher ☐ b tailor ☐ c mechanic ☐ d doctor
- He helps his father in his
☐ a house ☐ b station ☐ c hospital ☐ d shop
- Ahmed's mother is a
☐ a teacher ☐ b nurse ☐ c tailor ☐ d vet
- Ahmed's father fixes
☐ a bikes ☐ b cars ☐ c desks ☐ d cakes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A paramedic does a job. He saves people's lives.
☐ a bad ☐ b sad ☐ c brave ☐ d dirty
- A brings food, or packages to places.
☐ a street cleaner ☐ b delivery person ☐ c paramedic ☐ d tailor
- Water resources make sure people get clean water.
☐ a doctors ☐ b farmers ☐ c engineers ☐ d officers
- Mechanics fix
☐ a vehicles ☐ b computers ☐ c phones ☐ d TV
- The traffic officer helps people the road.
☐ a make ☐ b do ☐ c cross ☐ d help
- The fixed my old dresses.
☐ a doctor ☐ b paramedic ☐ c cleaner ☐ d tailor
- Adam is doing for school.
☐ a search ☐ b research ☐ c emergency ☐ d traffic
- A helps people during emergencies and can save lives.
☐ a paramedic ☐ b delivery person
☐ c traffic officer ☐ d mechanic
- A keeps the streets clean and the city look nice.
☐ a delivery person ☐ b street cleaner ☐ c paramedic ☐ d mechanic
- Yesterday, I saw a paramedic helping people in an/an
☐ a research ☐ b emergency ☐ c package ☐ d vehicle

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار.

traffic - help - water - clothes

Many jobs are important in our community. A street cleaner helps to keep the streets clean. A traffic officer controls the ① A water resources engineer gives us clean ② Paramedics ③ people in emergencies. A tailor makes and fixes clothes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar is doing research about jobs that help the community. His friends Youssef and Salma want to help him. Youssef wants to be a mechanic because he likes fixing things. Omar wants to be a water resources engineer to help people get clean water. Salma wants to be a paramedic to help people in emergencies. They also talk about other jobs like traffic officers, street cleaners, delivery people, and tailors. They learn that all jobs are important because they help people in different ways.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Omar is doing about jobs that help the community
 a cleaning b drawing c research d shopping
- Salma wants to be a to help people in emergencies.
 a engineer b paramedic c traffic officer d tailor

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is Omar doing research about?
- What job does Salma want to do?
- How can a water resources engineer help people?

5 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Jobs that help the community

mechanic - paramedic

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



garbage	قمامة / نفايات	health	الصحة
garbage bags	أكياس القمامة	noisy	صاخب / مزعج
posters	ملصقات	students	طلاب
classmates	زملاء الدراسة	environment	البيئة
principal	مدير المدرسة	traffic	المرور
signs	لافتات		

Other words كلمات أخرى

throw garbage	يرمي القمامة	sure	متأكد
parents	الوالدين	drivers	السائقون
environment	البيئة	bin (trash bin)	سلة المهملات
weekend	عطلة نهاية الاسبوع	classmate	زميل الفصل
dangerous	خطير	Maybe	ربما

Expressions, prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

looks terrible	يبدو فظيع	better for	أفضل لـ
That's not Okay	هذا غير مقبول	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
bad for	ضار لـ	get better	يتحسن
cross the road safely	يعبر الطريق بأمان	make posters	يعمل ملصقات
speak with	تحدث مع	instead of	بدلاً من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

ask	يطلب / يسأل
join	ينضم
cross	يعبر
need	يحتاج

Past ماض

asked
joined
crossed
needed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

let	يسمح / يدع
hang	يعلق
write	يكتب
speak	يتحدث
think	يفكر / يعتقد
ride	يركب

Past ماض

let
hung
wrote
spoke
thought
rode

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 maybe ربما / may be ربما يكون

تأتي كلمة واحدة في بداية الجملة - أو نهايتها

- Maybe we should go to the park.
may be

كلمتان وتأتي كفعل بمعنى (ربما يكون) وتستخدم بعد الفاعل في الجملة

- She may be busy right now.

2 let

يأتي فعل (let) للاقتراح بمعنى دعنا / هيا

- Let's clean the park.

أو بمعنى يدع أو يسمح

- The teacher lets us make posters.

Study the following

1 Look at all the garbage near the park. It looks terrible.

انظر إلى كل القمامة قرب الحديقة. إنها تبدو فظيعة.

2 I know. People throw garbage everywhere. That's not okay.

أعلم. الناس يرمون القمامة في كل مكان. هذا غير مقبول.

3 I can ask my teacher to let us make posters to hang around the park.

يمكنني أن أطلب من معلمتي أن تسمح لنا بصنع ملصقات لنعلقها حول الحديقة.

4 Can we ask other students to join us?

5 We can't cross the road safely in the morning.

6 Can we give the signs to parents and drivers?

هل يمكننا إعطاء اللافتات للوالدين والسائقين؟

7 We should also walk or ride bikes when we can

يجب علينا أيضاً أن نمشي أو نركب الدراجات عندما نستطيع

8 My little brother can't ride a bike yet, but he walks

لا يستطيع أخي الصغير ركوب الدراجة بعد ولكنه يمشي.

9 I think we should make signs that say "Drive Slowly"

أعتقد أنه ينبغي علينا صنع لافتات تقول: "قد ببطء"



استمع إلى النص:



Tape Script

Arabic Meaning

Mariam : Look at all the garbage near the park. It looks terrible.

Hadi : I know. People throw **garbage**⁽¹⁾ everywhere. That's not okay.

Nour : We need to do something. It's bad for the environment.

Mariam : You're right. We can clean it this **weekend**⁽²⁾.

Hadi : Yes, I can bring some garbage bags.

Nour : I can ask my teacher to let us make **posters**⁽³⁾ to hang around the park.

Mariam : That's a great idea! I'll write, "Please use the bin."

Hadi : Can we ask other students to join us?

Nour : Yes, we can. I'm sure our **classmates**⁽⁴⁾ will be able to help too.

Mariam : But there's another problem - traffic near the school.

Hadi : It's very noisy and **dangerous**⁽⁵⁾.

Nour : We can't cross the road safely in the morning.

Mariam : Maybe we can ask our **principal**⁽⁶⁾ to help.

Hadi : Can she talk to someone about it?

Nour : Yes! She may be able to speak with the traffic officer.

Nour : I think we should make signs that say "Drive **Slowly**⁽⁷⁾!"

Mariam : Can we give the **signs**⁽⁸⁾ to parents and drivers?

Hadi : Yes, we can, and we should also walk or ride bikes when we can.

Nour : That's better for our health, too.

Mariam : My little brother can't ride a bike yet, but he walks.

Hadi : My sister is young, but she's able to ride with me.

Nour : When we all help, things get better.

- ١- قمامة
- ٢- عطلة نهاية الاسبوع
- ٣- ملصقات
- ٤- زملاء الفصل
- ٥- خطير
- ٦- مدير المدرسة
- ٧- بيض
- ٨- لافتات

Language in use

Using can/ can't/ able to

Can / Can't

مصدر الفعل. can / can't + inf. (كل الضمائر) فاعل

نستخدم "can" أو "can't" للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة في الوقت الحاضر.

➤ **Example:** I **can** bring some garbage bags.

- We **can't** cross the road safely in the morning.

نستخدم "can" في صيغة السؤال لطلب الإذن أو السماح بشيء.

➤ **Example:** **Can** you hang posters around the park?

- Yes, I **can**. No, I **can't**.

be able to

I	→ am	} able to + inf. فعل في المصدر
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	→ is	
We / You / They / اسم جمع	→ are	

- We use "verb be (am/is/are) + able to" to show ability in the Present

نستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن القدرة أيضًا، وهي أكثر رسمية من "can" وتستخدم أحيانًا بدل "can" خاصة في الكتابة الرسمية

➤ **Examples:** She is **able to** speak with the traffic officer.

- My sister is **able to** ride a bike.

Question

السؤال

السؤال في المضارع البسيط

Am / Is / Are + فاعل + able to + inf.?

- Is she **able to** speak French?

Check up Exercises

1. Nour is (**able to speaks**) English well.
2. My sister can (**rides**) a bike.
3. They (**not able**) to come today.
4. He (**can to**) carry the heavy bag.
5. We are (**can**) to help with the posters.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Mariam sees near the park.

- ☐ a flowers ☐ b trees ☐ c garbage ☐ d animals

2. They want to clean the park

- ☐ a next year ☐ b this weekend ☐ c tomorrow ☐ d today

3. Nour will ask her teacher to let them

- ☐ a bring bags ☐ b make posters ☐ c play outside ☐ d call parents

4. The traffic near the school is

- ☐ a quiet and safe ☐ b slow and easy
☐ c noisy and dangerous ☐ d fast and clean

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The word "garbage" means:

- ☐ a food ☐ b trash ☐ c trees ☐ d posters

2. We can the park this weekend.

- ☐ a clean ☐ b throw ☐ c break ☐ d eat

3. They want to make to hang around the park.

- ☐ a posters ☐ b books ☐ c flags ☐ d games

4. We can't the road safely in the morning.

- ☐ a cross ☐ b throw ☐ c jump ☐ d brush

5. Walking or riding bikes is better for our

- ☐ a health ☐ b school ☐ c homework ☐ d games

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

garbage - posters - noisy - bags

There is a lot of garbage near the park. People throw garbage everywhere. They want to clean the park this weekend. Some students will bring ① bags. They will make ② to remind people to use the bin. The traffic near the school is ③ and dangerous.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She (not can) walk to school. SB
2. I am (able) run fast. SB
3. (Can't) they do the research? - Yes, they can. SB
4. She (able) speak with the traffic officer.
5. They (able) finish the project on time.
6. They (not able) to come today
7. He (can to) carry the heavy bag
8. My sister can (rides) a bike.
9. She (not can) walk to school.
10. I am (able) run fast.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. play - I - outside - can - football. SB
2. speak - well - She's - English - able to - very. SB
3. clean - room - Can - the - today - they? SB
4. able to - They - sing - are - beautifully. SB

6 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Helping the environment

garbage - clean the park

★ Story Time

Story: The Proud Rose

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



bright	زاهي	peck	ينقر (الطائر)
creature	مخلوق / كائن	shine (shone)	تشرق (الشمس)
sparkled	متألق / لامع	weak	ضعيف
helpful	مساعد / مفيد	refreshed	متعشة
unpleasant	غير سار	embarrassed	مُحرج
seasons	فصول	thorns	أشواك
close friends	أصدقاء مقربون	cactus	صبار
petals	بتلات (أو أوراق الزهرة)	moral	درس اخلاقي / مغزى

Other words

كلمات أخرى

desert	صحراء	strong	قوي
rose	وردة	gently	بلطف
thirsty	عطشان	surprised	مندهش / متفاجئ
sharp	حاد	rough	خشن
stem	ساق النبات	mean	سيء / وقح
recovered	تعافى		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

once upon a time	كان يا ما كان (يحكي أن)	began to dry up	بدأ في الذبول / الجفاف
in need	في حاجة	lose her color	فقدت لونها
far away	بعيدة جداً	fly down	طار نحو الأسفل
proud of	فخور بـ	the way I treated you	الطريقة التي عاملتك بها
covered in	مغطى بـ	by how they looked	من خلال مظهرهم
even though	على الرغم من أن	came back to life	عادت إلى الحياة
make fun of	يسخر من		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
sparkle	يتلألأ
smell	يشم / تفوح رائحته
admire	يُعجب بـ
pass	يمر
treat	يعامل
share	يشارك
judge	يحكم على

Past ماض

sparkled
smelled
admired
passed
treated
shared
judged

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
grow	ينمو
give off	ينبعث / يخرج من
shine	تشرق / تسطع
become	يصبح
lose	يفقد
fly	يطير
speak	يتحدث
come back	يعود

Past ماض

grew
gave off
shone
became
lost
flew
spoke
came back

Definitions تعريفات

thorns	الاشواك	are the sharp points that grow on the stem or a branch of a plant to protect it الاشواك هي النتوءات الحادة التي تنمو على الساق او فرع النبات لحمايته.
petals	بتلات	are the soft, colorful, parts of a flower that surround the center البتلات هي الأجزاء والناعمة والملونة من الزهرة التي تحيط بمركزها.
to peck	ينقر	is to hit or pick at something with a beak, like a bird does ينقر يعني أن يضرب أو يلتقط شيئاً بمنقاره، كما تفعل الطيور.
unpleasant	غير سار	is when something is not nice and makes you feel unhappy or uncomfortable. عندما يكون الشيء غير لطيف ويجعلك تشعر بعدم السعادة أو الانزعاج.

Study the following

- 1 Once upon a time, in a dry desert far away, there lived a beautiful rose.
يحكى أنه في قديم الزمان، في صحراء قاحلة بعيدة، عاشت وردة جميلة.
- 2 She had soft red petals that sparkled in the sunlight and gave off a sweet, lovely smell.
كانت بتلاتها حمراء ناعمة تتلألأ في ضوء الشمس، وتنبعث منها رائحة زكية.
- 3 Every creature in the desert admired her beauty, and the rose knew it.
كان كل مخلوق في الصحراء يُعجب بجمالها، وكانت الوردة تعلم ذلك.
- 4 Growing next to the rose was an old, rough cactus.
كان ينمو بجانب الوردة صبار قديم خشن.
- 5 He was covered in long, sharp thorns and didn't have any flowers or bright colors.
كان مغطى بأشواك طويلة حادة، ولم يكن له أزهار أو ألوان زاهية.
- 6 The rose didn't like the cactus at all.
لم تُعجب الوردة بالصبار إطلاقاً.
- 7 "Why do you have so many thorns?" she would ask.
كانت تسأل: "لماذا لديك كل هذه الأشواك؟"
- 8 "Even though the cactus never said anything mean back, the rose kept making fun of him."
مع أن الصبار لم يُبدِ أي ردٍ سيء، إلا أن الوردة استمرت في السخرية منه.
- 9 Seasons passed, and one year, the summer was much hotter than usual.
مرت الفصول، وفي أحد الأعوام، كان الصيف أشد حرارة من المعتاد.
- 10 Soon, the beautiful rose started to lose her color.
سرعان ما بدأت الوردة الجميلة تفقد لونها.
- 11 One day, the rose saw a small bird fly down and gently peck at the cactus.
في أحد الأيام، رأت الوردة طائراً صغيراً يطير وينقر الصبار برفق.
- 12 Feeling embarrassed, the rose spoke to the cactus. "I'm sorry for the way I treated you," she said.
شعرت الوردة بالحرج، فتحدثت إلى الصبار قائلة: "أنا آسفة على طريقة معاملتي لك."
- 13 "I didn't know you were so strong and helpful."
"لم أكن أعلم أنك بهذه القوة وانك مفيد."
- 14 From that day on, she never judged anyone by how they looked again.
منذ ذلك اليوم، لم تعد تحكم على أي شخص من مظهره."

1 Read and answer the following questions:

The Proud Rose الوردة المتكبرة

Once upon a time, in a dry desert far away, there lived a beautiful rose. She had soft red petals that sparkled in the sunlight and gave off a sweet, lovely smell. Every creature in the desert admired her beauty, and the rose knew it. She was very proud of how she looked and believed she was the most special plant in the desert.



في يوم من الأيام، كانت هناك وردة جميلة تعيش في صحراء كاحلة وبعيدة. كانت بتلاتها الحمراء ناعمة وتتلألأ تحت ضوء الشمس، وتنفوح منها رائحة عطرة وجميلة. كانت جميع الكائنات في الصحراء تعجب بجمالها، وكانت الوردة تعرف ذلك. كانت فخورة جداً بشكلها وتعتقد أنها أجمل وأهم نبتة في الصحراء.

Growing next to the rose was an old, rough cactus. He was covered in long, sharp thorns and didn't have any flowers or bright colors. The rose didn't like the cactus at all. She looked at him every day and thought he was unpleasant to look at. "Why do you have so many thorns?" she would ask. "You're so rough and unpleasant to look at." Even though the cactus never said anything mean back, the rose kept making fun of him.

كان ينمو بجانب الوردة صبار قديم وخشن. كان مغطى بأشواك طويلة وحادة، ولم يكن له أي زهور أو ألوان زاهية. لم تكن الوردة تحب الصبار أبداً. كانت تنظر إليه كل يوم وتراه قبيحاً. كانت تقول له: "لماذا لديك كل هذه الأشواك؟ شكلك خشن وغير جميل." ورغم أن الصبار لم يرد عليها بكلام سيئ أبداً، استمرت الوردة في السخرية منه.

Seasons passed, and one year, the summer was much hotter than usual. The sun shone, and the desert grew even drier. All the small plants began to dry up. Soon, the beautiful rose started to lose her color. Her petals became dry and weak. She was very thirsty, but there was no water anywhere. One day, the rose saw a small bird fly down and gently peck at the cactus. The bird drank some water from inside the cactus and flew away, happy and refreshed.

مرت الفصول، وجاء صيف حار جداً. كانت الشمس قوية، وأصبحت الصحراء أكثر جفافاً. بدأت النباتات الصغيرة بالجفاف. بدأت الوردة الجميلة تفقد لونها، وأصبحت بتلاتها جافة وضعيفة. شعرت الوردة بالعطش الشديد، لكنها لم تجد أي ماء. في يوم من الأيام، رأت الوردة طائراً صغيراً يطير نحو الصبار ويبدأ في النقر عليه بلطف. شرب الطائر القليل من الماء من داخل الصبار، ثم طار مبتسماً ومنتعشاً.

The rose was surprised. She didn't know the cactus had water inside. Feeling embarrassed, the rose spoke to the cactus. "I'm sorry for the way I treated you," she said. "I didn't know you were so strong and helpful. Could you please give me some water?" The kind cactus smiled and shared his water with the rose.

تفاجأت الوردة! لم تكن تعرف أن داخل الصبار ماء. شعرت بالخجل، ثم تحدثت إلى الصبار وقالت: "وهي محرجة أنا أسفة لأنني كنت أعاملك بسوء. لم أكن أعلم أنك قوي ومفيد. هل يمكنك أن تعطيني قليلاً من الماء؟" ابتسم الصبار بلطف، وشاركها الماء.

Slowly, the rose came back to life. From that day on, she never judged anyone by how they looked again.

وببطء، عادت الوردة إلى الحياة من جديد. ومنذ ذلك اليوم، لم تحكم على أحد بمظهره مرة أخرى.

Pronunciation

Stress is the part of the word we say louder and stronger

التشديد هو الجزء في الكلمة الذي ننطقه بصوت أعلى وأقوى من باقي المقاطع.

1 (One-syllable words) كلمات مكونة من مقطع واحد

في الكلمات ذات المقطع الواحد، يتم تشديد الكلمة بأكملها.

EX: nurse → الكلمة كلها مشددة لأنها من مقطع واحد

2 (Two-syllable words) كلمات من مقطعين

عادةً يكون التشديد في الكلمات التي تتكون من مقطعين على المقطع الأول.

EX: tailor → TAI-lor (مشدّد "TAI" المقطع الأول)

3 (Three-syllable words) كلمات من ثلاثة مقاطع

في بعض الكلمات ذات الثلاثة مقاطع، يكون التشديد على المقطع الثاني.

EX: mechanic → me-CHAN-ic (المشدّد "CHAN" المقطع الثاني)

 Read the sentences. Write if the stress is on the first syllable or the second syllable of the bold words

اقرأ الجمل. اكتب هي يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول أم الثاني للكلمات التي بخط سميك.

1. The **tailor** made a beautiful dress. →
2. A **mechanic** fixed our family car yesterday. →
3. The **architect** designed a new school building. →
4. A traffic **officer** helped the children cross the street safely. →
5. The **vehicle** was parked near the library. →

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Sarah went to the park with her

- ☐ a teacher ☐ b family ☐ c friends ☐ d cat

2. The weather was

- ☐ a rainy ☐ b cold ☐ c windy ☐ d warm

3. Sarah rode her

- ☐ a horse ☐ b bike ☐ c scooter ☐ d car

4. After lunch, they saw in the pond.

- ☐ a birds ☐ b frogs ☐ c ducks ☐ d fish

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. are the sharp points that grow on a stem to protect the plant. SB

- ☐ a Leaves ☐ b Petals ☐ c Thorns ☐ d Roots

2. are the soft, colorful parts of a flower that surround the center. SB

- ☐ a Stems ☐ b Petals ☐ c Seeds ☐ d Thorns

3. To means to pick or hit something with a beak. SB

- ☐ a jump ☐ b peck ☐ c plant ☐ d grow

4. If something is SB

- ☐ a pleasant ☐ b quiet ☐ c unpleasant ☐ d beautiful

5. The cactus grows in the SB

- ☐ a desert ☐ b sky ☐ c tree ☐ d water

6. The thorns are very I can't touch them. SB

- ☐ a soft ☐ b nice ☐ c sharp ☐ d great

7. The desert was very and had little water.

- ☐ a dark ☐ b wet ☐ c dry ☐ d full

8. The sun strongly during the hot summer last season.

- ☐ a shone ☐ b ran ☐ c floated ☐ d blinked

Unit 3 Community Builders

9. The rose became when it had no water.

a strong

b weak

c thick

d tall

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار.

dry - cactus - sparkled - refreshed

One day, a rose grew in a dry desert with very little water. Her red petals
1 brightly in the strong sunlight. A bird came and drank water
from the **2** After that, it flew away feeling **3** and
happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة.

In a dry desert, there lived a beautiful rose. She had soft red petals and a sweet smell. All the animals loved her. But the rose did not like the cactus next to her because it was covered with sharp thorns and had no flowers. One hot summer, the rose became thirsty and dry, but the cactus stayed strong because it had water inside. A small bird came to drink water from the cactus. The rose was surprised and felt sorry. She asked the cactus for water, and he gave it to her. The rose became healthy again. From that day, she never judged anyone by how they look again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The rose was proud because she was very

a strong

b beautiful

c tall

d thirsty

2. The cactus had many

a flowers

b petals

c thorns

d leaves

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. What did the rose learn at the end of the story?

4. How did the cactus help the rose?

5. Why was the rose thirsty in the summer?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. it had water inside

2. what is the moral of the story

6 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

The Kindness of the Cactus

1. Why didn't the rose like the cactus?

2. What did the rose learn at the end of the story?

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



brilliant	بارع / لامع / عبقرى	nanoscience	علم النانو
hero	بطل	discoveries	اكتشافات
tiny	صغير جداً	gold nanoparticles	جزيئات نانوية من الذهب
achievement	إنجاز	cancer	مرض السرطان
amazing research	بحث مذهل	awards	جوائز
particles	جسيمات	causes	اسباب
food waste	اهدار الطعام	effects	مؤثرات
global expert	خبير عالمي	solutions	حلول
chemistry	الكيمياء		



Other words

كلمات أخرى

United States	الولايات المتحدة	major	كبير / هام
scientific	علمي	pride	فخر / اعتزاز
idea	فكرة	scientist	عالم
including	يتضمن / بما في ذلك	leftover food	بقايا الطعام
true	حقيقي / صحيح	extra	زائر / فاض
facts	حقائق	food bank	بنك الطعام
poor people	الفقراء	golden touch	لمسة ذهبية
university	جامعة		



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

work with	يعمل مع	expert in chemistry	خبير في الكيمياء
because of	بسبب / بفضل	studied at Ain Shams University	درس في جامعة عين شمس
source of pride	مصدر فخر		
have a great love for	لديه حب كبير لـ	be named after	يسمى باسم
shop smart	التسوق الذكي	from a young age	منذ سن صغير

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

study	يدرس
donate	يتبرع
receive	يستقبل / يتلقى
store	يخزن
cause	يسبب
continue	يواصل
detect	يكشف
support	يدعم

Past ماضٍ

studied
donated
received
stored
caused
continued
detected
supported

Present مضارع

become	يصبح
come	يأتي
find out	يكشف
throw away	يلقي ببعدها

Past ماضٍ

became
came
found out
threw away

Study the following

1 Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed: Science With a Golden Touch. الدكتور مصطفى السيد: العلم بلمسة ذهبية.

2 Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist! الدكتور مصطفى السيد عالم مصري بارع!

3 He was born in Egypt in 1933 and had a great love for learning from a young age. وُلد في مصر عام ١٩٣٣ وكان يحب التعلم منذ صغره.

4 He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo before going to the United States to continue his scientific research. درس في جامعة عين شمس بالقاهرة قبل أن يسافر إلى الولايات المتحدة ليكمل أبحاثه العلمية.

5 Dr. El-Sayed became a global expert in chemistry and nanoscience. أصبح الدكتور السيد خبيراً عالمياً في الكيمياء وعلوم النانو.

6 Nanoscience is the study of very tiny things - much smaller than a human hair. علم النانو هو دراسة الأشياء الدقيقة جداً - أصغر بكثير من شعرة الإنسان.

7 One of his most important discoveries is called El-Sayed's Rule, a scientific idea that was named after him. واحدة من أهم اكتشافاته تُسمى «قاعدة السيد»، وهي فكرة علمية سُميت باسمه.

8 One of his biggest achievements is his work with tiny gold particles. من أعظم إنجازاته عمله مع جزيئات الذهب الدقيقة.

Unit 3 Community Builders

9 He found out how these "gold nanoparticles" can be used to help doctors detect and treat some types of cancer.

اكتشف كيف يمكن استخدام هذه «الجسيمات النانوية» لمساعدة الأطباء في كشف وعلاج بعض أنواع السرطان.

10 Because of his important discoveries, Dr. El-Sayed has received many major awards, including the U.S. National Medal of Science.

بفضل اكتشافاته المهمة، حصل الدكتور السيد على العديد من الجوائز الكبرى، منها وسام العلوم الوطني الأمريكي.

11 He's a true hero of science and a source of pride for Egypt!

إنه بطل حقيقي في مجال العلم ومصدر فخر لمصر!

1 Think and answer:

فكر وأجب:

Dr. Mostafa El Sayed: Science With a Golden Touch

دكتور مصطفى السيد: العلم بلمسة ذهبية

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist! He was born in Egypt in 1933 and had a great love for learning from a young age. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo before going to the United States to continue his scientific research.



الدكتور مصطفى السيد هو عالم مصري بارع! ولد في مصر عام 1933، وكان يحب التعلم منذ صغره. درس في جامعة عين شمس بالقاهرة، ثم سافر إلى الولايات المتحدة ليواصل أبحاثه العلمية.

Dr. El-Sayed became a global expert in chemistry and nanoscience. Nanoscience is the study of very tiny things - much smaller than a human hair. One of his most important discoveries is called El-Sayed's Rule, a scientific idea that was named after him.

أصبح الدكتور السيد خبيراً عالمياً في الكيمياء وعلوم النانو. وعلم النانو هو دراسة الأشياء الدقيقة جداً - أصغر بكثير من شعر الإنسان. واحدة من أهم اكتشافاته تُعرف باسم «قاعدة السيد»، وهي فكرة علمية سُميت باسمه.

One of his biggest achievements is his work with tiny gold particles. He found out how these "gold nanoparticles" can be used to help doctors detect and treat some types of cancer.

ومن أعظم إنجازاته عمله على جزيئات الذهب الدقيقة. اكتشف كيف يمكن استخدام هذه «الجسيمات النانوية» لمساعدة الأطباء في كشف وعلاج بعض أنواع السرطان.

Because of his important discoveries, Dr. El-Sayed has received many major awards, including the U.S. National Medal of Science. He's a true hero of science and a source of pride for Egypt!

وبفضل اكتشافاته المهمة، حصل الدكتور السيد على العديد من الجوائز الكبرى، منها وسام العلوم الوطني الأمريكي. إنه حقاً بطل في مجال العلم ومصدر فخر كبير لمصر!

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

Here are some tips for writing a biography

بعض النصائح لكتابة سيرة ذاتية

(Key facts):	الحقائق الأساسية	(Interesting facts):	معلومات ممتعة
(Early life):	حياته المبكرة	(Simple language):	لغة بسيطة وواضحة
(What he did):	ما الذي فعله؟	(His impact):	تأثيره
(Time order):	الترتيب الزمني		

Biography: Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed سيرة ذاتية عن الدكتور مصطفى السيد

1. Key facts: حقائق رئيسية

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a famous Egyptian scientist. He was born in Egypt in 1933 and works in the field of nanoscience.

2. Early life: حياته الأولى (نشأته)

He always loved learning. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo before going to the United States to continue his education.

3. What he did: ما الذي فعله

Dr. El-Sayed became a top expert in chemistry and nanoscience. He was the first to use tiny gold particles to help treat some types of cancer.

4. Time order: الترتيب الزمني

- Born in 1933
- Studied at Ain Shams University
- Created new scientific ideas
- Received many important awards

5. Interesting facts: حقائق مذهلة

There is a scientific rule named after him called "El-Sayed's Rule."

6. Simple language: لغة بسيطة

This biography is written in clear and easy words so young students can understand it.

7. His impact: تأثيره على الآخرين

Dr. El-Sayed helped the world with his science.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed was born in
☐ a 1943 ☐ b 1933 ☐ c 1953 ☐ d 1923
- He studied at University.
☐ a Cairo ☐ b Ain Shams ☐ c Oxford ☐ d Harvard
- Dr. El-Sayed worked with tiny particles.
☐ a silver ☐ b iron ☐ c gold ☐ d plastic
- He got the U.S. National of Science.
☐ a Prize ☐ b Trophy ☐ c Medal ☐ d Gift

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- He was a great in chemistry.
☐ a experiment ☐ b experience ☐ c expert ☐ d excellent
- Pollution is a problem. It is found all over the world.
☐ a local ☐ b global ☐ c national ☐ d helpful
- is a very dangerous disease.
☐ a Cancer ☐ b Award ☐ c Medal ☐ d Rule
- A scientist is a person who
☐ a sings songs ☐ b plays football
☐ c studies and learns new things ☐ d cooks food
- Nanoscience is the study of things that are
☐ a big and heavy ☐ b small and tiny
☐ a fast and noisy ☐ b hot and cold

6. Dr. El-Sayed worked with gold

- a** machines **b** books **c** particles **d** cars

7. Tiny means

- a** very small **b** very tall **c** very loud **d** very long

8. A discovery is something that you

- a** lose **b** forget **c** find out **d** sell

9. A hero is someone who great things.

- a** does **b** runs **c** eats **d** sleeps

10. A/An person is someone who is smart.

- a** boring **b** brilliant **c** lazy **d** angry

11. Awards are given to people who

- a** break things **b** don't work
c do something great **d** shout loudly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

scientist - tiny - cancer - award

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a famous scientist from Egypt. He was born in 1933 and loved learning. He worked in the field of science. He studied very ① things, like gold particles. These particles help doctors find and treat ② Dr. El-Sayed won a big ③ for his great work. People in Egypt are very proud of him.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Mostafa El-Sayed is a smart man from Egypt. He was born many years ago and loved to study when he was a boy. He went to Ain Shams University, and later traveled to America to learn more. Dr. El-Sayed became very good at science. He studied tiny things that we cannot see with our eyes. He used little pieces of gold to

Unit 3 Community Builders

help doctors find out sickness and help people get better. He got many prizes for his great work. People in Egypt feel happy and proud of him.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is from

a the USA

b France

c Egypt

d Canada

2. He worked with very things.

a big

b small

c long

d loud

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. Where did Dr. El-Sayed go to study more science?

4. What did he use to help doctors?

5. How do people in Egypt feel about Dr. El-Sayed?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. he was born in Egypt in 1933

2. is he a true hero of science

6 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A Great Egyptian Scientist

scientist - cancer

Review

on Unit 3



paramedic مسعف



architect
مهندس معماري



water resources engineer
مهندس موارد مائية



mechanic ميكانيكي



tailor ترزي / خياط



delivery person
موظف توصيل



street cleaner
عامل نظافة الشارع



traffic officer
ضابط مرور

garbage

قمامة / نفايات

creature

مخلوق / كائن

principal

مدير المدرسة

sparkled

متألق / لامع

signs

لافتات

helpful

مساعد / مفيد

health

الصحة

unpleasant

غير سار

noisy

صاحب / مزعج

petals

بتلات (أو أوراق الزهرة)

environment

البيئة

peck

ينقر (الطائر)

traffic

المرور

shine (shone)

تشرق (الشمس)

Unit 3 Community Builders

weak	ضعيف	food waste	اهدار الطعام
refreshed	منتعشة	global expert	خبير عالمي
embarrassed	مُحرج	chemistry	الكيمياء
thorns	أشواك	nanoscience	علم النانو
cactus	صبار	discoveries	اكتشافات
brilliant	بارع / لامع / عبقري	gold nanoparticles	جزيئات نانوية من الذهب
hero	بطل	cancer	مرض السرطان
tiny	صغير جداً	awards	جوائز
achievement	إنجاز	causes	اسباب
amazing research	بحث مذهل	effects	مؤثرات
particles	جسيمات	solutions	حلول

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع	
fix	يصلح
join	ينضم
cross	يعبر
sparkle	يتلألأ
admire	يُعجب بـ
treat	يعامل
share	يشارك
judge	يحكم على
donate	يتبرع
receive	يستقبل / يتلقى
cause	يسبب
detect	يكشف
support	يدعم

أفعال منتظمة

Past ماضٍ	
fixed	
joined	
crossed	
sparkled	
admired	
treated	
shared	
judged	
donated	
received	
caused	
detected	
supported	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
bring	يحضر	brought
hang	يعلق	hung
ride	يركب	rode
give off		gave off
	ينبعث / يخرج من	
shine	يسطع	shone
find out	يكشف	found out
throw away	يلقي بعيداً	threw away

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Using can/ can't/ able to

Can / Can't

مصدر الفعل + can / can't + inf. (كل الضمائر) فاعل

● نستخدم "can" أو "can't" للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة في الوقت الحاضر.

➤ **Example:** I **can** bring some garbage bags.- We **can't** cross the road safely in the morning.

● نستخدم "can" في صيغة السؤال لطلب الإذن أو السماح بشيء.

➤ **Example:** Can you hang posters around the park?- Yes, I **can**. No, I **can't**.

be able to

I	→ am	} فعل في المصدر + inf. able to
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	→ is	
We / You / They / اسم جمع	→ are	

- We use "verb be (am/is/are) + able to" to show ability in the Present

● نستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن القدرة أيضاً، وهي أكثر رسمية من "can" وتستخدم أحياناً بدل

"can" خاصة في الكتابة الرسمية

➤ **Examples:** She is **able to** speak with the traffic officer.- My sister is **able to** ride a bike.

Question

السؤال

● السؤال في المضارع البسيط:

Am / Is / Are + فاعل + able to + inf.?

- Is she **able to** speak French?



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Jobs that help the community

Many people have jobs that help the community. A mechanic fixes cars. A paramedic helps people in emergencies. A traffic officer controls the cars and keeps people safe. A water resources engineer makes sure we have clean water. A tailor makes and repairs clothes. All these jobs are important.

2

Lesson 2

Helping the Environment

We saw a lot of garbage near the park. It looked very bad. We decided to clean the park this weekend. We will bring garbage bags and pick up all the trash. We also want to make posters to remind people to keep the park clean. This helps the environment.

3

Lesson 3

The Rose and the Cactus

In a dry desert, a proud rose grew beside a quiet cactus. She made fun of his sharp thorns. When summer came, the rose needed water. The cactus gently helped her. She learned not to judge others by how they look and became his friend. It was a great lesson.

4

Lesson 4

A Great Egyptian Scientist

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a famous scientist from Egypt. He was born in 1933. He loved learning and studied science. He worked with tiny gold particles to help treat cancer. He won many awards for his work. People in Egypt are proud of him. He is a real hero of science.

5

Al Azhar Test

Jobs in the community

I want to be a teacher. My father is a farmer. A paramedic helps people in emergencies. A delivery person delivers packages to homes. A tailor fixes old clothes.

6

Test

Helping Our Community

We can help our community in many ways. We can clean the park and streets. We can make posters that say "Use the bin" or "Drive slowly." We should walk or ride bikes to school. Helping others and keeping our city clean is important. Every small action makes a difference.

Al-Azhar Test

امتحان خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة :

nanoscience - awards - gold - Egypt - scientist

Ali : Hello Salma! Have you heard about Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed?

Salma : Yes! He is a famous Egyptian ① -----

Ali : That's right! He was born in ② ----- in 1933.

Salma : He is very smart! He studied in Cairo and then went to the U.S.

Ali : He is an expert in chemistry and ③ -----

Salma : I read that he worked with ④ ----- nanoparticles to help fight cancer!

Ali : Wow! That's amazing. Did he get any ⑤ ----- for his work?

Salma : Yes! He even got the U.S. National Medal of Science!

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

①	doctors	cross	paramedics	engineers	-----
②	brave	strong	cool	vehicle	-----
③	fix	drive	school	help	-----
④	what	when	were	where	-----
⑤	homework	French	American	Egyptian	-----

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. We put trash in the

a poster

b bin

c sign

d bag

2. A is a person who discovers new scientific things.

a teacher

b painter

c scientist

d driver

3. A helps tell drivers what to do on the road.

a sign

b notebook

c bag

d game

4. People should not throw on the street.
☐ a posters ☐ b garbage ☐ c pencils ☐ d gifts
5. is the air, land, and water around us.
☐ a Traffic ☐ b Nanoscience ☐ c Environment ☐ d School
6. I bring some water bottles to the trip.
☐ a can ☐ b be ☐ c able ☐ d able to
7. We play in the park when it rains.
☐ a can't ☐ b be ☐ c able to ☐ d will able
8. She is to speak English very well.
☐ a can ☐ b be ☐ c able ☐ d able to
9. They carry the heavy boxes alone.
☐ a can't ☐ b be ☐ c able ☐ d can to
10. You help me with my homework.
☐ a can ☐ b be able to ☐ c able ☐ d can be

4 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Omar is doing research about jobs that help the community. His friends Youssef and Salma want to help him. Youssef wants to be a mechanic because he likes fixing things. Mechanics fix vehicles. Omar wants to be a water resources engineer. Water resources engineers help people get clean water at home and at school. Salma is interested in learning about different jobs.

A: Choose the correct answer:

1. Omar is doing research about
☐ a animals ☐ b games ☐ c presents ☐ d jobs
2. Youssef wants to be a mechanic because he
☐ a likes drawing ☐ b likes fixing things ☐ c likes reading ☐ d eating lunch
3. Water resources engineers help us get
☐ a clean water ☐ b air ☐ c food ☐ d books

Unit 3 Community Builders

B: Answer the following questions:

4. What job does Omar want to do in the future?

5. What is Salma interested in?

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. people - in - help - Paramedics - emergencies.

2. make - and - Tailors - clothes - old - fix.

3. people - Traffic officers - the - help - road - cross.

4. the park - clean - can - We - weekend - this.

5. not - throw - People - garbage - should - everywhere.

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن :

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Jobs in the community

teacher - farmer - paramedic - delivery person - tailor

Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Omar wants to be a

a doctor

b mechanic

c tailor

d water resources engineer

2. A mechanic fixes

a books

b cars

c food

d clothes

3. A paramedic helps people in

a emergencies

b shops

c schools

d parks

4. A tailor makes and fixes

a roads

b houses

c clothes

d water

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A/An cleans the street this weekend.

a street cleaner

b officer

c engineer

d doctor

2. The traffic near the school is noisy and

a quiet

b safe

c dangerous

d happy

3. The cactus has sharp

a flower

b thorns

c root

d petals

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

mechanic - water - paramedic - tailor

I want to be a mechanic because I like fixing cars. My friend wants to be a ① resources engineer to help people get clean water. Another great job is a ② This person helps people in emergencies. A useful job too is a ③ who makes and fixes clothes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

A red rose grew in a hot, dry place. She was very pretty and smelled nice. All the animals liked her, and she felt proud. Next to her was a cactus. He had sharp points and looked rough. The rose thought he was ugly and said mean things to him. But the cactus stayed kind. One summer, it was very hot and dry. The rose started to get weak. One day, she saw a bird drinking water from the cactus. She was shocked. The cactus had water!

She asked him for help, and he shared his water. The rose felt better. After that, she was kind to everyone and became friends with the cactus. She never judged anyone by how they look.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The rose lived in a very place.
 a cold b dry c rainy d snowy
- The cactus looked, but he was kind.
 a friendly b soft c rough d clean

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did the rose think the cactus was ugly?

.....

- What did the bird do with the cactus?

.....

- What lesson did the rose learn at the end?

.....

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- the - help - community - Can - jobs - our?

.....

- science - a true - of - He's - hero.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We (can to) clean it this weekend.

- We (is able to) ask the principal.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. can we ask other students to join us

2. yes we can.

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Helping Our Community

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

park and streets - makes a difference.

Review 1



on Units 1, 2 & 3

Objectives of Review 1

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 3 - 1.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 3 - 1.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

- To evaluate progress in Units 3 -1.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

Unit 1



buy souvenirs

يشترى هدايا تذكارية



make furniture

يصنع أثاث



play music

يعزف موسيقى



take photos

يلتقط صور



walk to a small museum

يمشي إلى متحف صغير



visit ancient sites

يزور الأماكن القديمة



coral reefs

الشعاب المرجانية



snorkel

يغطس بأنبوب تنفس



landscape

منظر طبيعي

salute the flag

يحي العلم

routine

روتين

pack schoolbag

يعبئ الحقيبة المدرسية

typical day

يوم نموذجي

play in the ground

يلعب بالفناء

try my best

أبذل ما في وسعي

have a short break

يأخذ استراحة قصيرة

tricky

صعب

national anthem

النشيد الوطني

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
visit يزور	
play يعزف	
protect يحمي	
dive يغطس	
harvest يحصد	
accompany يصطحب	
support يدعم/ يساعد	
chat يدرش	

Past ماض	
visited	
played	
protected	
dived	
harvested	
accompanied	
supported	
chatted	

Present مضارع	
make يصنع	
spend يقضي	
keep يحفظ	
take care يعتني	
catch يصطاد	
sell يبيع	
weave ينسج	
wake up يستيقظ	
grow يزرع	

Past ماض	
made	
spent	
kept	
took care	
caught	
sold	
wove	
woke up	
grew	

Language

ملاحظات لغوية

Present Simple زمن المضارع البسيط

زمن المضارع البسيط يستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق العامة، والعادات، والروتين اليومي، والأفعال المتكررة، والحقائق العلمية.

Form

التكوين

صيغة المضارع البسيط:

(He, She, It) / الاسم المفرد + verb + (s-es-ies)

الفاعل يأخذ (s) أو (es) أو (ies) في نهاية الفعل

- He **plays** football. (هو يلعب كرة القدم).

- She **watches** TV. (هي تشاهد التلفاز).

I, You, We, They / الاسم الجمع + (inf) مصدر الفعل

الفاعل يأتي في المصدر.

- We **play** football. (نحن نلعب كرة القدم).

- They **watch** TV. (هم يشاهدون التلفاز).

Usage

استخدام

استخدامات المضارع البسيط:

a. General truths or facts.

- الحقائق العامة:

- Nubians **live** in the south of Egypt.

b. Habits and regular actions.

- العادات والروتين اليومي:

- Children often **help** their parents after school.

c. Repeated actions.

- الأحداث المتكررة:

- I **go** to the cinema every week.

Negative

النفى

⊙ النفي في المضارع البسيط:

He, She, It, الاسم المفرد + **doesn't** + inf.

- He **doesn't** play football. (هو لا يلعب كرة القدم).

I, You, We, They + **don't** + inf.

- They **don't** watch TV. (هم لا يشاهدون التلفاز).

لاحظ عند استخدام **never** في النفي مع **He/She/It** يبقى الفعل كما هو بإضافة (s)

- He **never** uses a laptop.

Question

السؤال

⊙ السؤال في المضارع البسيط:

Does + he / she / it الاسم المفرد + inf.?

- **Does** he play football?

- Yes, he **does**. - اجابة مثبتة
- No, he **doesn't**. - اجابة منفية

- Where **does** he work?

Do + I / we / you / they/ الاسم جمع + inf.?

- **Do** they watch TV? (هل يشاهدون التلفاز؟)

- Yes, they **do**. - اجابة مثبتة
- No, they **don't**. - اجابة منفية

Keywords

الكلمات الدالة

- every (day - week - month - year) always / usually / sometimes / often / never

Unit 2



natural fertilizer

سماد طبيعي



weeds

الحشائش الضارة



basil

الريحان



hibiscus

الكركديه



water

يسقي / يروي



plant

يزرع



pull out

يقتلع / يزيل من الجذر

oil	زيت نباتي	the Nile	النيل
herbs	أعشاب	flow	يتدفق
shade	ظل	tilapia	سمك البلطي
check for	يتحرى الدقة للتأكد من شيء / يفحص	flood	فيض أو يتهمر / فيضان
care for	يعتني به / يهتم به	temple	معبد
weather	الطقس	sand dunes	كثبان رملية
shade	ظل	guide	مرشد
sunglasses	نظارة شمسية	history	تاريخ
rainy	ممطر	fossil	حفريّة
protect	يحمي	waterfall	شلال
windy	عاصف / شديد الرياح	rare	نادر
wet	مبتل / رطب	skeleton	عمود فقري
sunny	شمس	exhibit	معرض
crocodile	تمساح	tucked	مخبأ / مدموسا
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
relax يسترخي	relaxed	keep يحافظ	kept
taste مذاقه / يكون له طعم	tasted	wear يرتدي	wore
harm يضر / يؤذي	harmed	fly يطير	flew
protect يحمي	protected	sit يجلس	sat
flow يتدفق	flowed	take care يعتنى	took care
flood يفيض / ينهمر	flooded	bring يحضر / يجلب	brought
provide يمد	provided	leave يغادر	left
organize ينظم	organized	ride يركب	rode
protect يحمي	protected		
tuck يدس / يخبأ	tucked		

Language in use

ملاحظات لغوية

Present Continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين



Usage الاستخدام

● يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام).

Ex: Ahmed is playing now.

● يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر عن حالة وصف الصورة.

Ex: In picture (1), he is pulling out weeds.

Notes

- ملاحظات عند إضافة ing :

١- يحذف حرف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) مثل :

make → making

write → writing

- لاحظ أن حرف (e) هنا غير منطوق.

٢- لا يحذف حرف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) مثل :

see → seeing

be → being

- لاحظ أن حرف (e) هنا منطوق.

٣- الفعل المنتهي بـ (ie) يحول إلى (y) ثم نضيف (ing) :

die → dying

lie → lying

٤- نضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال :

cut → cutting

run → running

Negative النفي

عند نفي زمن المضارع المستمر نضع (not) بعد am - is - are :

- They are not playing in the garden.

Question السؤال

وعند عمل سؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر نقدم Am - Is - Are على الفاعل :

● وعند عمل سؤال بأداة الاستفهام تستخدم القاعدة الآتية :

تكملة الجملة ing + الفعل + الفاعل + am - is - are + (أداة الاستفهام)

- Are you watching TV now?

Yes, I am. No, I am not.

- What is he doing now?

He is eating lunch.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

now	الآن	Look!	انظر!	Listen!	استمع!
at the present time	في الوقت الحاضر	this weekend	هذه العطلة	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة

Unit 3



paramedic مسعف



architect
مهندس معماري



water resources
engineer
مهندس موارد مائية



mechanic ميكانيكي



tailor ترزي / خياط



delivery person
موظف توصيل



street cleaner
عامل نظافة الشارع



traffic officer
ضابط مرور

garbage

نفايات / قمامة

sparkled

متألق / لامع

principal

مدير المدرسة

helpful

مساعد / مفيد

signs

لافتات

unpleasant

غير سار

noisy

مزعج / صاحب

petals

بتلات (أو أوراق الزهرة)

environment

البيئة

peck

ينقر (الطائر)

traffic

المرور

shine (shone)

تشرق (الشمس)

creature

مخلوق / كائن

weak

ضعيف

Review 1

refreshed	منتعشة	global expert	خبير عالمي
embarrassed	مُحرج	chemistry	الكيمياء
thorns	أشواك	nanoscience	علم النانو
cactus	صبار	discoveries	اكتشافات
brilliant	بارع / لامع / عبقري	gold nanoparticles	جزيئات نانوية من الذهب
hero	بطل	cancer	مرض السرطان
tiny	صغير جداً	awards	جوائز
achievement	إنجاز	causes	اسباب
amazing research	بحث مذهل	effects	مؤثرات
particles	جسيمات	solutions	حلول
food waste	اهدار الطعام		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
join	ينضم
cross	يعبر
sparkle	يتلألأ
admire	يُعجب بـ
treat	يعامل
judge	يحكم على
donate	يتبرع
cause	يسبب
detect	يكشف
support	يدعم

Past ماضٍ

joined
crossed
sparkled
admired
treated
judged
donated
caused
detected
supported

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
hang	يلقى
give off	ينبعث/ يخرج من
shine	تشرق
find out	يكشف
throw away	يلقى ببعدا

Past ماضٍ

hung
gave off
shone
found out
threw away

Language in use

Using can/ can't/ able to

Can / Can't

مصدر الفعل + can / can't + inf. (كل الضمائر) فاعل

نستخدم "can" أو "can't" للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة في الوقت الحاضر.

➤ **Example:** I **can** bring some garbage bags.

- We **can't** cross the road safely in the morning.

نستخدم "can" في صيغة السؤال لطلب الإذن أو السماح بشيء.

➤ **Example:** **Can** you hang posters around the park?

- Yes, I **can**. No, I **can't**.

be able to

I	→ am	} فعل في المصدر + inf. able to
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	→ is	
We / You / They / اسم جمع	→ are	

- We use "verb be (am/is/are) + able to" to show ability in the Present

نستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن القدرة أيضاً، وهي أكثر رسمية من "can" وتستخدم أحياناً بدل

"can" خاصة في الكتابة الرسمية

➤ **Examples:** She is **able to** speak with the traffic officer.

- My sister is **able to** ride a bike.

Question

السؤال

السؤال في المضارع البسيط:

Am / Is / Are + فاعل + able to + inf.?

- **Is** she **able to** speak French?

Test on Units 1,2&3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة ،

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Ras Mohamed is located in the south of

- a** Cairo **b** Sinai **c** Luxor **d** Alexandria

2. Many people visit Ras Mohamed to

- a** ride camels **b** climb mountains
c swim and dive **d** go shopping

3. In Ras Mohamed, you can see colorful in the sea.

- a** cars **b** clothes **c** fish **d** boats

4. There are mangrove trees near the in the park.

- a** school **b** beach **c** hotel **d** museum

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة ،

1. The streets are because it is raining heavily.

- a** dry **b** wet **c** dusty **d** hot

2. A..... is a group of people who live or work together in the same Place.

- a** research **b** community **c** tailor **d** future

3. live in the Nile and they are very dangerous.

- a** Camels **b** Crocodiles **c** Vegetables **d** Donkeys

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

perch - crocodiles - birds - cars

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is about 6,650 kilometers long. Many animals live in and near the Nile. Big fish like Nile ① and tilapia swim in the water. ② live in the river too. They are dangerous animals. Many ③ come to the river to drink and find food.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجاب عن الأسئلة:

Hello! My name is Omar, and I want to tell you about a typical day at my school here in Egypt. My day starts early. I wake up at 6:30 a.m., get dressed, and eat a quick breakfast-usually bread, cheese, and some fruit. School starts at 7:30. We begin by standing in line, saluting the flag, and singing the national anthem. Then we go to our classrooms and begin our lessons. The first subject is usually Arabic. After that, we study other subjects like math, English, and science. Some topics are a little difficult, but I always try my best. At around 10:15, we have a short break. I usually eat a sandwich, talk with my friends, and play with them. Later, we have more lessons like social studies, religion, or computer. I enjoy learning how to use the computer in class. But my favorite subject is P.E. because I love running and playing football. The school day ends at 1:30 p.m. I feel a bit tired, but I'm happy after a good day. I go home, eat lunch, rest for a while, and then do my homework.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Omar's first subject in the morning is usually
 a English b Arabic c science d religion
- At the break, Omar usually eats a
 a cake b sandwich c burger d banana

B. Answer the following questions:

- What time does Omar wake up?

- What is Omar's favorite subject? Why does he like it?

- What does Omar do after school?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- protect - help - the park - nature - **Does** ?

- play - **I** - outside - can - football.

Review 1

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. (Can't) they do the research? – Yes, they can.
2. She (don't) study in the afternoon.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how do they help the community

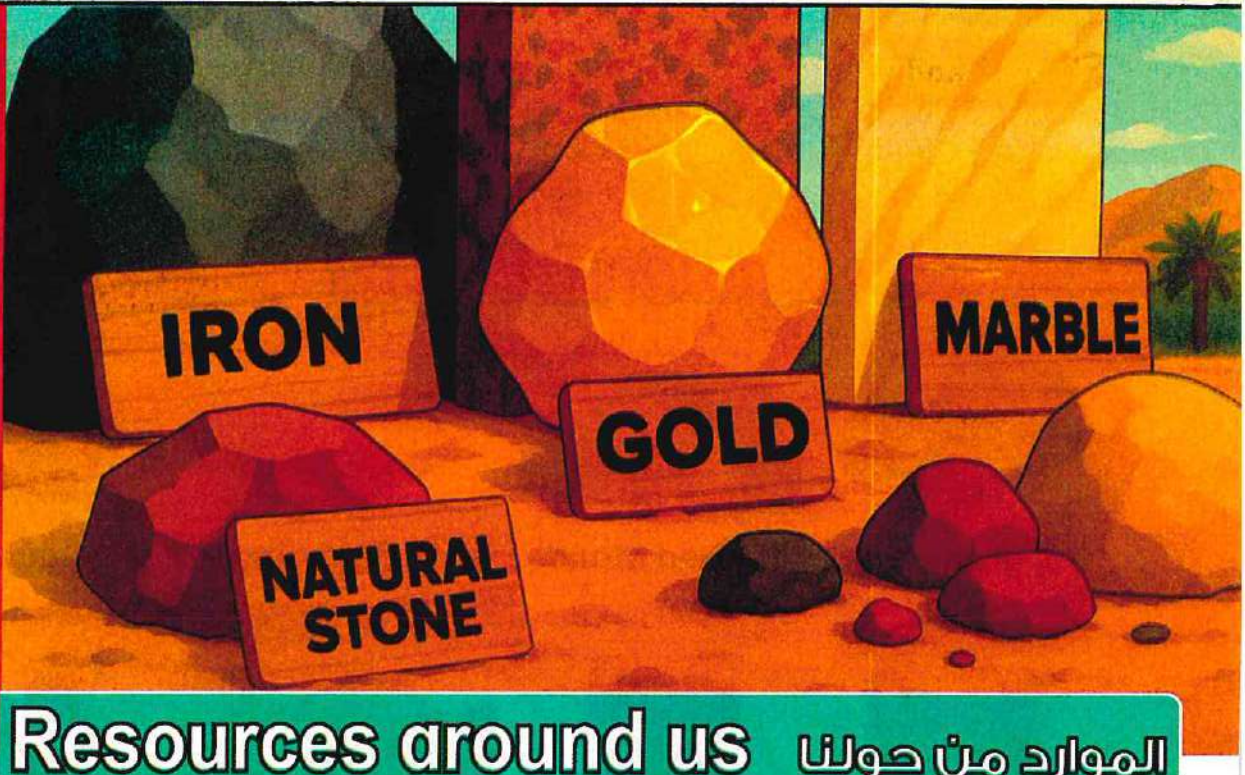
2. the park is clean

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

The Weather in Egypt

hot and dry - protect their homes



Resources around us الموارد من حولنا

Learning Outcomes

Listening:

- Identify key facts in short texts about materials and energy.
يحدد الطالب الحقائق الرئيسية في النصوص القصيرة حول المواد الخام والطاقة.
- Follow conversations about real life topics.
يتابع الطالب المحادثات حول مواضيع الحياة الواقعية.
- Identify specific information using context clues and key vocabulary.
يحدد الطالب معلومات معينة باستخدام أدلة من السياق والمفردات الرئيسية.
- Identify how to pronounce short "oo"; /ʊ/ and long "oo"; /u:/.
يميز الطالب بين نطق صوت /ʊ/ القصير والطويل /u:/.

Speaking:

- Talk about materials used in Egypt.
يتحدث الطالب عن المواد الخام المستخدمة في مصر.
- Share ideas with a partner about how to save energy.
يشارك الطالب أفكاره مع زميله حول كيفية توفير الطاقة.
- Express opinions and give advice using modal verbs.
يعبر الطالب عن رأيه ويقدم نصيحة باستخدام الأفعال المساعدة.

Reading:

- Differentiate between natural and man-made resources in an informational text.
يميز الطالب بين الموارد الطبيعية والبشرية في نص معلوماتي.
- Identify facts, details, and main ideas in a short passage.
يحدد الطالب الحقائق، التفاصيل، والأفكار الرئيسية في فقرة قصيرة.
- Answer WH-questions and complete tasks based on reading.
يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة (WH) ويكمل المهام المبنيّة على النص.

Writing:

- Write a fact file.
يكتب الطالب ملف حقائق.
- Use modal verbs correctly (must, mustn't, should, shouldn't) in writing.
يستخدم الطالب الأفعال المساعدة بشكل صحيح (must, mustn't, should, shouldn't).
- Plan and organize a research using clear steps.
يخطط الطالب وينظم بحث باستخدام خطوات واضحة.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



granite

الجرانيت



colored stones

احجار الملونة



gold

الذهب



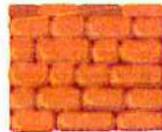
clay

الصلصال / طين



papyrus

ورق البردي



bricks

طوب



temple

معبد



amulet

تميمة

material
survive
ancient
decorate

مادة خام
يظل / يبقى
قديم / اثنى
يزين

wrap
modern / recent
linen
stone

يغلف / (يلف شيء حول)
معاصر / حديث
كتان
حجر



Other words

كلمات أخرى

cloth
statue
museum
golden
gold
wood
building
mummy
unbelievable
golden ornament

قماش
تمثال
متحف
ذهبي
ذهب
خشب
البناء
مومياء
لا يصدق / مذهل
زخرفة ذهبية

sculptures
jewelry
colorful
flax
scroll
pots
grain
huge
fascinating

منحوتات
مجوهرات
غني بالألوان / زاهي الألوان
نبات الكتان
لفافة
اواني
الغلال / الحبوب
ضخم
خلاب / رائع

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

carve.... from	ينحت (شيء) من (المادة)	(be) made from	مصنوع من
kind of cloth	نوع من القماش	wrap in	يلف (شيء) في (شيء)
look nice or beautiful	يبدو لطيفاً أو جميلاً	to write on	ليكتب عليه
(be) shaped like	يكون على شكل	writing material	مادة تستخدم للكتابة
work on a project	يعمل في دراسة	thousands of years	آلاف السنوات

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض		Present مضارع		Past ماض	
survive	يبقى	survived		write	يكتب	wrote	
decorate	يزين	decorated		read	يقرأ	read	
wrap	يغلف	wrapped		see	يرى	saw	
cover	يغطي	covered		wear	يرتدي	wore	
exist	يتواجد	existed		mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	
carve	ينحت	carved					
last	يدوم	lasted					

Definitions

تعريفات

material مادة خام	something used to make things	شيء يُستخدم لصنع أشياء أخرى
survive يظل/ينجو	to stay alive	يبقى على قيد الحياة
ancient قديم	very old; from a long time ago	قديم جداً؛ من زمن بعيد
decorate يزين	to make something look nice or beautiful	يجعل الشيء يبدو جميلاً أو أكثر جمالاً
wrapped غُلف	covered something by putting material around it	غطى شيئاً بلف مادة أو قماش حوله
modern حديث	from recent times; not old	من الزمن الحديث؛ ليس قديماً

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 make + مفعول به + فعل بالمصدر + صفة

- عندما يأتي مفعول به بعد الفعل **make**، يأتي بعده إما فعل بالمصدر أو صفة:

- To decorate is to make something (look) beautiful.

2 continue + v. ing / to-inf.

- بعد الفعل **continue** يمكن استخدام صيغة (v. ing) أو صيغة (to-inf).

- She picked up her book and continued reading.

- The farmer continued to work after he had some rest.

3 use + اسم + for + v. ing / to-inf.

- We use knives for cutting things.

- We use paper to write on.

4 is made from / of: مصنوع من / يُصنع من

- يمكن استخدام حرف الجر **from** أو **of** بعد التعبير (is made).

- Linen is made from flax.

- This table is made of wood.

Study the following

1 I'm reading about materials the ancient Egyptians used.

أنا أقرأ عن المواد التي استخدمها المصريون القدماء.

2 They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold!

لقد استخدموا الحجر، ورق البردي، الكتان، الخشب، وحتى الذهب.

3 Stone is used in modern buildings and statues.

يستخدم الحجر في المباني الحديثة والتمثال.

4 Ancient Egyptians carved huge statues from granite.

نحت المصريون القدماء تماثيل ضخمة من الجرانيت.

5 Ancient Egyptians wore linen every day, and wrapped mummies in it.

كان المصريون القدماء يرتدون الكتان يومياً، ولفوا المومياوات به.

6 Ancient Egyptians used gold and small colorful stones to make jewelry.

استخدم المصريون القدماء الذهب والأحجار الصغيرة الملونة لصنع المجوهرات.

7 Ancient Egyptian culture is really fascinating.

إن الثقافة المصرية القديمة بالفعل رائعة.



استمع إلى النص:

Tape Script



Nour : Hey Omar! Are you working on the history **project**⁽¹⁾?

نور: هل تعمل على مشروع التاريخ؟

Omar : Yes! I'm reading about **materials**⁽²⁾ the **ancient Egyptians**⁽³⁾ used. It's so cool. They used stone, clay, **papyrus**⁽⁴⁾, linen, wood, and even gold!

عمر: نعم! أنا أقرأ عن المواد التي استخدمها المصريون القدماء. الأمر رائع جداً. استخدموا الحجر، والطين، والبردي، والكتان، والخشب، وحتى الذهب!

Nour : That's amazing! I saw a picture of a papyrus scroll in a museum. It's **unbelievable**⁽⁵⁾ how long that material could **survive**⁽⁶⁾.

نور: هذا مذهل! رأيت صورة لورقة بردي في متحف. من المدهش كيف بقيت هذه المادة طوال هذا الوقت!

Omar : I know! And some materials are still used today. Stone is used in modern buildings- just like they used it for pyramids and **temples**⁽⁷⁾.

عمر: أعلم! وبعض هذه المواد ما زلنا نستخدمها حتى اليوم. الحجر مثلاً ما زال يُستخدم في بناء المباني الحديثة - تماماً كما استخدموه في بناء الأهرامات والمعابد.

Nour : And **statues**⁽⁸⁾! I love how they carved huge statues from granite. We still use stone today for **sculptures**⁽⁹⁾ and buildings.

نور: والتمائيل أيضاً! أحب كيف نحتوا تماثيل ضخمة من الجرانيت. وما زلنا نستخدم الحجر اليوم في صنع التماثيل والمباني.

Omar : And linen! It's made from flax. Ancient Egyptians wore it every day-and even **wrapped**⁽¹⁰⁾ **mummies**⁽¹¹⁾ in it.

عمر: والكتان! يُصنع من نبات الكتان. كان المصريون القدماء يلبسونه كل يوم - وحتى استخدموه في لف المومياوات.

Nour : My grandma has a linen dress. It's soft, cool, and simple.

نور: جدتي عندها فستان من الكتان. إنه ناعم، رائع، وبسيط.

Omar : Clay is another interesting one. They made pots, jars, bricks-and small statues and **amulets**⁽¹²⁾ too!

عمر: والطين مادة مثيرة أيضاً. صنعوا منه أواني وجرار (مفرد جرة)، وقطع طوب - وحتى تماثيل صغيرة و"تمويذات".

Nour : Amulets? You mean, like small objects people believed could protect them?

نور: تمويذات؟ تقصد أشياء صغيرة كان الناس يعتقدون أنها تحميهم؟

Omar : Exactly! Some were shaped like animals. They used gold and small colorful stones to make **jewelry**⁽¹³⁾.

عمر: بالضبط! بعضها كان على شكل حيوانات. واستخدموا الذهب وأحجاراً صغيرة ملونة لصنع الحلي.

Nour : These materials are **natural**⁽¹⁴⁾, strong, and useful. That's why they lasted thousands of years. Ancient Egyptian culture is really fascinating.

نور: هذه المواد طبيعية، وقوية، ومفيدة. ولهذا السبب بقيت آلاف السنين. الحضارة المصرية القديمة فعلاً رائعة!

Arabic Meaning

١. مشروع
٢. مواد خام
٣. المصريون القدماء
٤. ورق البردي
٥. لا يصدق
٦. يبقى
٧. المعابد
٨. التماثيل
٩. المنحوتات
١٠. يلف/ يغلف
١١. المومياوات
١٢. التماثيل
١٣. المجوهرات
١٤. طبيعي

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة ،

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What did ancient Egyptians use to build houses?

☐ a Wood and flax

☐ b Bricks and stones

☐ c Glass and linen

☐ d Plastic and water

2. What material did they use for writing?

☐ a Wood

☐ b Cloth

☐ c Stone

☐ d Papyrus

3. What shiny metal did ancient Egyptians use for jewelry?

☐ a Gold

☐ b Bronze

☐ c Silver

☐ d Copper

4. What did they make from flax plants?

☐ a Cotton

☐ b Wool

☐ c Linen

☐ d Silk

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة ،

1. means to make something look nice or beautiful.

☐ a Decorate

☐ b Wear

☐ c Write

☐ d Protect

2. To is to continue to exist for a long time.

☐ a wrap

☐ b carve

☐ c survive

☐ d cover

3. is something used to make things.

☐ a Survive

☐ b Material

☐ c Culture

☐ d Time

4. Ancient Egyptians used to wrap mummies.

☐ a jewelry

☐ b glass

☐ c papyrus

☐ d linen

SB

5. We use colored to make beautiful jewelry.

☐ a mummies

☐ b dresses

☐ c stones

☐ d statues

SB

6. Ancient Egyptians carved huge statues from

☐ a granite

☐ b papyrus

☐ c linen

☐ d cloth

SB

7. In Egypt, we have many that we can visit.

a rivers

b houses

c kings

d temples

SB

8. The Ancient Egyptians used to write on.

a water

b papyrus

c clay

d gold

SB

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wrap - materials - exist - carve

Long ago, people used natural materials. They would ¹ wood or stone to make tools. They also used these ² to protect their homes. We also use natural materials to protect ourselves from the weather. And we wrap gifts. These old ways still ³

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم ثلاثي:

1. why do you go to school

2. Ancient egyptians used papyrus to write on

5 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Egypt in the past

The ancient Egyptians - making jewelry

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	climate change	تغير المناخ
pollute	يلوث	protect	يحمي
solar panels	الواح الطاقة الشمسية	waste	يهدر
harm	يؤذي / يضر		

Other words

كلمات أخرى

electricity	الكهرباء	devices	أجهزة
wisely	بحكمة	distance	مسافة
fuel	وقود	unsafe	غير آمن
fridge	ثلاجة	endless	لا نهاية له
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	sunshine	أشعة الشمس
greenhouses	الصوب الزراعية	gas	الغاز
dirty	متسخ / قذر	oil	النفط / البترول
planet	كوكب		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وجمل وعبارة

save energy	يوفر الطاقة	charge our phones	نشحن هواتفنا
in use	في حالة الاستخدام	causes climate change	يسبب التغير المناخي
wasting energy	إهدار الطاقة	make a big difference	يحدث فرق كبير
cause harm	يسبب ضرر	make mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء
energy hero	بطل في توفير الطاقة	keeps us healthy	يحافظ على صحتنا
care for	بعتني بـ		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
save يوفر	saved	light يضيء	lit / lighted
charge يشحن	charged	come يأتي	came
turn off يطفئ	turned off	keep يحافظ على	kept
affect يؤثر على	affected	pay يدفع	paid

Definitions تعريفات

pollute يلوث	To make something dirty or unsafe, especially the air, water, or land. يجعل شيئاً متسخاً أو غير آمن، خاصة الهواء أو الماء أو الأرض.
protect يحمي	Caring for something so you don't make mistakes or cause harm. الاهتمام الجيد لتجنب ارتكاب الأخطاء أو التسبب في ضرر.
climate المناخ	The usual weather in a place over a long time. الطقس المعتاد في مكان ما على مدى فترة طويلة.

Study the following

1 Energy is something we all need every day-to light our homes, cook, watch TV, and charge our phones.

الطاقة شيء نحتاجه جميعاً يومياً - لإضاءة منازلنا، والطهي، ومشاهدة التلفاز، وشحن هواتفنا.

2 But energy is not endless, so we must use it wisely.

لكن الطاقة ليست لا نهائية، لذا يجب أن نستخدمها بحكمة.

3 Some energy comes from nature, like solar and wind, which are clean and don't pollute.

بعض مصادر الطاقة تأتي من الطبيعة، مثل الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح، وهي طاقة نظيفة وغير ملوثة.

4 Egypt has lots of sunshine, so using more solar panels saves money and helps the planet.

تتمتع مصر بوفرة من أشعة الشمس، لذا فإن استخدام المزيد من الألواح الشمسية يوفر المال ويساهم في حماية كوكبنا.

5 Other energy types, like oil and gas, can harm the Earth.

أنواع أخرى من الطاقة، مثل النفط والغاز، قد تضر بالأرض.

6 We should save energy by turning off lights and devices when not in use.

يجب علينا توفير الطاقة بإطفاء الأنوار والأجهزة عند عدم استخدامها.

7 Cars and buses use fuel which pollutes the air.

تستخدم السيارات والاتوبيسات وقوداً يُلوث الهواء.

8 Walking or biking short distances also saves energy and keeps us healthy.

كما أن المشي أو ركوب الدراجات لمسافات قصيرة يوفر الطاقة ويحافظ على صحتنا.

9 Wasting energy causes climate change, which affects animals and their homes.

يسبب إهدار الطاقة تغير المناخ، مما يؤثر على الحيوانات ومنازلها.

10 Small daily actions can make a big difference.

يمكن للأفعال اليومية الصغيرة أن تُحدث فرقاً كبيراً.

11 Together, we can protect our country and planet-we should all be Energy Heroes.

معاً، يمكننا حماية بلدنا وكوكبنا - يجب أن نكون جميعاً أبطال الطاقة.

Read the text. What are some ways we can save electricity at home?

Energy⁽¹⁾ is something we all need every day-to **light**⁽²⁾ our homes, cook, watch TV, and **charge**⁽³⁾ our phones. In Egypt, we use **electricity**⁽⁴⁾, gas, and **solar power**⁽⁵⁾. But energy is not **endless**⁽⁶⁾, so we must use it wisely. Some energy comes from nature, like solar and wind, which are clean and don't **pollute**⁽⁷⁾. Egypt has lots of sunshine, so using more **solar panels**⁽⁸⁾ saves money and helps the planet."

الطاقة هي شيء نحتاجه جميعاً كل يوم - لإضاءة منازلنا، وطهي الطعام، ومشاهدة التلفاز، وشحن هواتفنا. في مصر، نستخدم الكهرباء، والغاز، والطاقة الشمسية. لكن الطاقة ليست غير محدودة، لذلك يجب أن نستخدمها بحكمة. بعض أنواع الطاقة تأتي من الطبيعة، مثل الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح، وهي نظيفة ولا تلوث البيئة. ومصر فيها الكثير من أشعة الشمس، لذا استخدام ألواح الطاقة الشمسية أكثر يساعدنا على توفير المال وحماية كوكب الأرض.

Other energy types, like oil and gas, can **harm**⁽⁹⁾ the Earth. We should save energy by turning off lights and **devices**⁽¹⁰⁾ when not in use, closing the fridge door quickly, and using the right size pot for cooking. Cars and buses use **fuel**⁽¹¹⁾ which pollutes the air. Walking or **biking**⁽¹²⁾ short distances also saves energy and keeps us healthy.

أما الأنواع الأخرى من الطاقة، مثل النفط والغاز، فقد تؤدي كوكب الأرض. يجب أن نوفر الطاقة عن طريق إطفاء الأنوار والأجهزة عند عدم استخدامها، وغلق باب الثلاجة بسرعة، واستخدام قدر مناسب الحجم عند الطهي. السيارات والحافلات تستخدم الوقود، وهذا يسبب تلوث الهواء. تكتن المشي أو ركوب الدراجة للمسافات القصيرة يوفر الطاقة ويجعلنا أكثر صحة.

Arabic Meaning

١. الطاقة
٢. يضيء
٣. يشحن
٤. الكهرباء
٥. الطاقة الشمسية
٦. بلا نهاية
٧. يلوث
٨. ألواح شمسية
٩. يضر
١٠. أجهزة
١١. وقود
١٢. ركوب الدراجة

Wasting energy causes **climate change**⁽¹³⁾, which **affects**⁽¹⁴⁾ animals and their homes. Small **daily actions**⁽¹⁵⁾ can make a big difference. Together, we can protect our country and planet—we should all be energy heroes!.

١٣. التغير المناخي
١٤. يؤثر على
١٥. الأحداث اليومية

إهدار الطاقة يسبب تغير المناخ، وهذا يؤثر على الحيوانات وبيوتها. الأفعال الصغيرة التي نقوم بها كل يوم يمكن أن تحدث فرقاً كبيراً. معاً، يمكننا حماية بلدنا وكوكبنا - يجب أن نكون جميعاً أبطال الطاقة!

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Modal Verbs: Must / Mustn't / Should / Shouldn't

1. Must + inf.: يجب ان

يستخدم الفعل الناقص (**must**) متبوعاً بفعل في المصدر بدون (**to**) للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام لنقول أن شيء مهم أو قانون:

- You **must turn off** the lights to save energy.

2. Mustn't + inf.: يجب ألا

يستخدم الشكل المنفي للفعل (**mustn't**) متبوعاً بفعل في المصدر بدون (**to**) للتعبير عن الحظر أو المنع.

- You **mustn't throw** rubbish on the ground.

3. Should + inf.: يجب ان - يُنصح بأن

يستخدم الفعل (**should**) متبوعاً بفعل في المصدر بدون (**to**) للتعبير عن النصيحة أو لذكر فكرة جيدة:

- You **should walk** to school if it's close.

4. Shouldn't + inf.: يجب ألا / لا يُنصح بأن

يستخدم الشكل المنفي للفعل (**shouldn't**) متبوعاً بفعل في المصدر بدون (**to**) للتعبير عن النصيحة بعدم فعل شيء أو لذكر أن الفكرة غير جيدة:

- You **shouldn't waste** water when washing your hands.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use to get energy from the sun. SB
☐ a wind turbines ☐ b greenhouses ☐ c fridges ☐ d solar panels
2. Gases from cars and buses can the air. SB
☐ a pollute ☐ b clean ☐ c charge ☐ d protect
3. Don't water when you brush your teeth. SB
☐ a use ☐ b harm ☐ c waste ☐ d close
4. We must the Earth from pollution. SB
☐ a forget ☐ b protect ☐ c use ☐ d leave
5. is the usual weather in a place over a long time.
☐ a Weather ☐ b Planet ☐ c Climate ☐ d Panel
6. The sun can make solar for homes.
☐ a rain ☐ b power ☐ c noise ☐ d food
7. The fire can you. Be careful!
☐ a help ☐ b feed ☐ c hug ☐ d harm
8. I need to my phone before it turns off.
☐ a charge ☐ b clean ☐ c cook ☐ d close
9. The lights went off because there was no
☐ a wind ☐ b water ☐ c electricity ☐ d paper
10. Use water Do not waste it.
☐ a quickly ☐ b wisely ☐ c loudly ☐ d slowly

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Saving energy helps our planet and saves money. Turn off lights when you leave a room. Unplug (افصل) things like laptops and TVs when not using them. They use energy even when off. Use less hot water. Take shorter showers and fix taps. Wear warmer clothes instead of turning up the heat. Open windows for fresh air instead of using fans. Use the sun for light during the day. Walk, bike, or use buses instead of cars when you can. These small actions save a lot of energy, and a lot of money.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What should you do with lights when you leave a room?

a Turn them on

b Turn them off

c Open the windows

d Use them for heat

2. What should you unplug when not using it?

a Laptops and TVs

b Lamps

c Windows

d Shoes

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Name (اذكري) one way you can save hot water.

4. What can you do instead of turning up the heating system?

5. What can we do during the day to save energy?

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You (**mustn't**) cross the street when the light is red.

SB

2. We (**mustn't**) wear a uniform at school.

SB

3. You (**must**) touch electrical wires.

SB

4. You (**mustn't**) listen to the teacher carefully.

SB

5. I (**mustn't**) finish my homework before going to bed.

6. You (**must**) make noise in the school library.

7. I think you (**shouldn't**) wear a coat. It could be cold outside.

8. I think we (**shouldn't**) go swimming. The weather is lovely today.

9. You (**should**) buy a ticket to travel by train.

10. You (**must**) eat a lot of sugar. It's bad for your health.

Unit 4 Resources around us

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة .

1. something - every day - need - we - Energy - is.

2. electricity - to - use - energy, - get - We .

3. panels - Using - solar - the - planet - helps .

4. turn off - should - not in use - We - lights - when

5. healthy - Walking - us - short - keeps - distances.

5 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

"Solar energy"

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

comes from the sun - turn the sunlight into electricity

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



gold

ذهب



iron

حديد



rock

صخر

minerals

المعادن

natural gas

غاز طبيعي

oil

البترو / النفط

jewelry

المجوهرات

natural resources

الموارد الطبيعية

Other words كلمات أخرى

valuable

ثمين / قيم

metals

معادن

deep

في العمق / عميق

Sinai

سيناء

liquid

سائل

especially

خاصة

heating

التدفئة

shiny

لامع

The Eastern Desert

الصحراء الشرقية

The Western Desert

الصحراء الغربية

steel

الحديد الصلب

buildings

مباني

kinds

أنواع

future

مستقبل

daily life

الحياة اليومية

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

under the ground

تحت الأرض

is found in

يوجد في

brings money to Egypt

يجلب الاموال لمصر

different kinds of

انواع مختلفة من

making electricity

توليد الكهرباء

grow big and strong

ينمو كبير وقويا

make jewelry

يصنع المجوهرات

build a strong future

يبنى مستقبلاً قوياً

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
contain	يحتوي على
heat	يسخن
use	يستخدم
develop	ينمو / يتطور

Past ماض	
contained	
heated	
used	
developed	

Present مضارع	
sell	يبيع
bring	يجلب
build	يبنى
grow	ينمو

Past ماض	
sold	
brought	
built	
grew	

Study the following

- Egypt has many valuable things under the ground.
تمتلك مصر أشياء ثمينة كثيرة تحت الأرض.
- Egypt has a lot of oil, rocks, and metals.
توجد في مصر كميات كبيرة من البترول، والصخور، والمعادن.
- We find oil deep under the ground, especially in the Western Desert and Sinai.
نجد البترول عميقًا تحت الأرض، خاصة في الصحراء الغربية وسيناء.
- Oil is a black liquid.
البترول هو سائل أسود اللون.
- Egypt also has a lot of natural gas.
كما توجد كميات كبيرة من الغاز الطبيعي في مصر.
- We can use natural gas for cooking, heating, and making electricity.
يمكننا استخدام الغاز الطبيعي للطهي، والتدفئة، وتوليد الكهرباء.
- Electricity is used for lights and TVs.
نستخدم الكهرباء لتشغيل الأضواء وأجهزة التلفاز.
- Gold is a beautiful, yellow, shiny metal.
الذهب معدن جميل، لونه أصفر وله بريق.
- Long ago, Ancient Egyptians used gold to make jewelry for kings and queens.
منذ زمن بعيد، استخدم المصريون القدماء الذهب لصنع حلي للملوك والملكات.
- Steel is used to build big buildings and cars.
ويستخدم الفولاذ لبناء المباني الكبيرة والسيارات.
- The soil in Egypt contains minerals.
تحتوي التربة في مصر على معادن.
- These minerals help plants grow big and strong.
وتساعد هذه المعادن النباتات أن تنمو كبيرة وقوية.
- These natural resources help Egypt grow and develop.
تساعد هذه الموارد الطبيعية مصر على النمو والتطور.
- By using these minerals wisely, Egypt can build a strong future.
وباستخدام هذه المعادن بحكمة، يمكن لمصر بناء مستقبل قوي.
- This future will be good for everyone.
وسيكون هذا المستقبل جيدًا للجميع.

Read the text. What things come from under the ground?:

اقرأ النص. ما الأشياء التي نستخرجها من تحت الأرض؟

استمع إلى النص:



Reading



Egypt has many **valuable**⁽¹⁾ things under the ground. We call these things **minerals**⁽²⁾. They are very important for our country.

في مصر، هناك أشياء ثمينة كثيرة تحت الأرض. نُسَمي هذه الأشياء معادن، وهي مهمة جدًا لبلدنا. Egypt has a lot of **oil**⁽³⁾, **rocks**⁽⁴⁾, and **metals**⁽⁵⁾. We find oil deep under the ground, especially in the Western Desert and Sinai. Oil is a black **liquid**⁽⁷⁾. Egypt sells oil to other countries. This **brings**⁽⁹⁾ money to Egypt. Egypt also has a lot of **natural gas**⁽¹⁰⁾ that we can use for cooking, heating, and making **electricity**⁽¹¹⁾ for lights and TVs.

مصر فيها الكثير من البترول، والصخور، والمعادن. نجد البترول عميقًا تحت الأرض، خاصة في الصحراء الغربية وسيناء. البترول هو سائل أسود. مصر تباع البترول إلى دول أخرى، وهذا يجلب المال لمصر. كما أن في مصر الكثير من الغاز الطبيعي، ونستخدمه في الطبخ، والتدفئة، وتوليد الكهرباء التي نحتاجها للإنارة وتشغيل التلفاز.

Gold is a beautiful, yellow, **shiny**⁽¹²⁾ metal. Long ago, Ancient Egyptians used gold to make beautiful **jewelry**⁽¹³⁾ for kings and queens. Today, Egypt still finds gold in the Eastern Desert. Also, Egypt has **iron**⁽¹⁶⁾ in the Eastern Desert. Iron is a strong metal. We use iron to make **steel**⁽¹⁷⁾. We use it to build big buildings and cars.

The soil in Egypt **contains**⁽¹⁹⁾ different kinds of minerals which help plants grow big and **strong**⁽²⁰⁾.

الذهب معدن جميل، لونه أصفر ولامع. منذ زمن طويل، استخدم المصريون القدماء الذهب لصنع خلي جميلة للملوك والملكات. واليوم، ما زالت مصر تجد الذهب في الصحراء الشرقية. كذلك، توجد في مصر كميات من الحديد في الصحراء الشرقية. الحديد معدن قوي، ونستخدمه لصنع الصلب، ونستعمله في بناء المباني الكبيرة والسيارات. أما التربة في مصر، فهي تحتوي على أنواع مختلفة من المعادن التي تساعد النباتات على أن تنمو كبيرة وقوية.

These **natural resources**⁽²¹⁾ help Egypt grow and **develop**⁽²²⁾. By using these minerals wisely, Egypt can build a strong future for everyone.

كل هذه الموارد الطبيعية تساعد مصر على أن تنمو وتتطور. وباستعمال هذه المعادن بطريقة حكيمة، يمكن لمصر أن تبني مستقبلًا قويًا للجميع.

Arabic Meaning

١. قيم/ثمين
٢. معادن
٣. بترول
٤. صخور
٥. معادن
٦. سائل
٧. يجلب
٨. الغاز الطبيعي
٩. الكهرباء
١٠. لامع
١١. مجوهرات
١٢. الحديد
١٣. الصلب
١٤. يحتوي على
١٥. قوي
١٦. الموارد الطبيعية
١٧. يتطور



Pronunciation

- ندرس في هذا الدرس صوت /ʊ/ وهو صوت قصير ويمثلة الحرفان (oo).
• وندرس أيضًا صوت /u:/ وهو صوت ممتد ويمثلة الحرفان (oo).

Short oo /ʊ/ words



good

جيد



foot

قدم



book

كتاب



look

ينظر



wood

خشب

Long oo /u:/ words



spoon

ملعقة



moon

القمر



food

طعام



zoo

hook /ʊ/

خطاف

boot /u:/

حذاء بريقة

tooth /u:/

سنة

school /u:/

مدرسة

1 Listen and sort:

استمع و صنف:

spoon - moon - good - foot - book - look

long /u:/

.....
.....
.....

short oo /ʊ/

.....
.....
.....

2 Listen and circle the word that has the /ʊ/ sound:

استمع وضع دائرة علي الكلمة ذات الصوت /ʊ/ القصير:

1. zoo / good / boot

2. wood / group / moon

3. moon / tooth / foot

3 Listen and circle the word that has the /u:/ sound:

استمع وضع دائرة علي الكلمة ذات الصوت /u:/ الممتد:

1. foot - food - good

2. good - spoon - look

3. hook - school - book

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Gold rings and silver necklaces are types of
☐ a tools ☐ b food ☐ c clothes ☐ d jewelry
- Oil and water are important natural
☐ a resources ☐ b problems ☐ c games ☐ d stories
- Iron and copper are examples of
☐ a metals ☐ b fruits ☐ c vegetables ☐ d papers
- Gold is very because it costs a lot.
☐ a cheap ☐ b heavy ☐ c light ☐ d valuable
- Rain is a that falls from clouds.
☐ a solid ☐ b gas ☐ c liquid ☐ d rock
- your home in winter keeps you warm.
☐ a Cooling ☐ b Heating ☐ c Breaking ☐ d Opening
- Oil and coal are found
☐ a in the sky ☐ b on the table
☐ c in the street ☐ d under the ground
- is a black liquid which Egypt sells to another countries.
☐ a Juice ☐ b Water ☐ c Oil ☐ d Metal
- We use to make cars and buses.
☐ a metal ☐ b rock ☐ c water ☐ d air

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

Metals - writing - resources - Minerals

The Earth gives us many valuable things. These are called ① Some of them are gas, minerals, and metals. We use gas for cooking and driving cars. ②, like salt, are found in the ground. ③, like iron, are used to build things. We must use these resources wisely.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Natural resources are things from nature that people use. Water, air, trees, soil, oil, coal, metals, and minerals are all natural resources. They help us live, work, and play. We use water to drink and clean. Trees give wood for homes. Oil and coal give us energy. Metals like iron build cars. Minerals like salt are in food. We must use these resources carefully. If we waste them, they may run out. Protecting natural resources keeps our planet healthy for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We get natural resources from
☐ a shops ☐ b nature ☐ c books ☐ d animals
- We should natural resources like oil and metals.
☐ a waste ☐ b break ☐ c burn ☐ d protect

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

- Why is it important to protect natural resources?

- How should we use our natural resources?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- does a magnet attract a piece of wood

- My sister hala goes to bed early

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



man-made	صناعي / من صنع الانسان	flooding	الفيضان
resources	مصادر / موارد	crops	المحاصيل
recycle	يعيد تصنيع	irrigation	الري
huge	ضخم	electricity	الكهرباء

Other words كلمات أخرى

helpful	نافع / مفيد	drought	الجفاف
tips	نصائح	lake	بحيرة
reusing	إعادة استخدام	regular	منتظم
accurate	دقيق / صحيح	officially	رسميا
information	معلومات	across	خلال / عبر
wall	حائط / جدار	grains	الحبوب
mirror	مرآة	factory	مصنع
clay	صلصال	dangerous	خطير
website	موقع الكتروني	safe	آمن

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

search the internet	يبحث في الانترنت	It took to...	استغرق مدة لكي
learn about	يتعلم عن	solve problems with	يحل مشاكل
(be) processed for	يتم معالجته لـ	in many ways	بطرق عديدة
instead of	بدلا من	across Egypt	في جميع انحاء مصر
do a research project	يجري مشروع بحثي		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
print يطبع	printed	draw يرسم	drew
explain يشرح	explained	understand يفهم	understood
create يصنع / ينشئ	created	find عن يبحث	found
process يصنّع	processed	learn يتعلم	learnt/learned
cross يعبرُ	crossed	keep على يحافظ	kept
solve يحلّ	solved	send يرسل	sent

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 information معلومات

- تعامل كلمة **(information)** كاسم مفرد غير معدود ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد رغم أنها تبدو جمعا من حيث المعنى:

- The **information** in this email **is** very important.

2 stop + اسم + (from) + v. ing: يمنع شيء أو شخص من فعل شيء

- The **dam** stops the river **(from)** flooding.

Study the following

1 Man-made resources are things people create using natural materials.

الموارد المصنّعة هي أشياء يصنعها البشر باستخدام المواد الطبيعية.

2 Glass is made from sand and used in windows, mirrors, and cups.

الزجاج يُصنع من الرمل ويُستخدم في صناعة النوافذ والمرايا والأكواب.

3 Paper is made from trees and processed in factories for writing and reading.

الورق يُصنع من الأشجار ويتم معالجته في المصانع للكتابة والقراءة.

4 People also recycle paper to make notebooks and newspapers.

يقوم الناس أيضًا بإعادة تدوير الورق لصنع الدفاتر والصحف.

5 The High Dam is a huge wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt.

يُعدّ السد العالي جداراً ضخماً يقطع مجرى نهر النيل في أسوان بمصر.

6 The dam stops the river from flooding and keeps water for people to use during the year.

يمنع السد الفيضانات ويخزن المياه لاستخدامها على مدار العام.

7 They built the High Dam to solve problems with flooding and drought.

"بُنِيَ السد العالي لحل مشكلات الفيضانات والجفاف.

8 They also wanted to give people clean electricity.

كما كان الهدف منه توفير الكهرباء النظيفة.

9 Egyptians built the High Dam in Aswan between 1960 and 1970.

استغرق بناء السد العالي في أسوان حوالي عشر سنوات، في الفترة ما بين عامي ١٩٦٠ و١٩٧٠.

10 The High Dam helps people in many ways.

"يساعد السد العالي المصريين بطرق عديدة.

11 Farmers use the water for irrigation, to grow vegetables, fruits, and grains all year

يستخدم المزارعون المياه في الري لزراعة الخضروات والفواكه والحبوب على مدار العام.

12 The dam also sends electricity to houses, schools, hospitals, and factories across Egypt.

كما يمدّ السد البيوت والمدارس والمستشفيات والمصانع بالكهرباء في جميع أنحاء مصر.

13 It protects cities from dangerous floods, and it makes sure people have water even when the river is low.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك، يحمي السد المدن من الفيضانات الخطيرة ويضمن توفير المياه للسكان حتى عندما ينخفض منسوب النهر.

Think and answer:

فكر وأجب:

Reading



Hi! I'm Omar, and I'm **doing a research project**⁽¹⁾ about **man-made resources**⁽²⁾ for my English class. I started by reading a book and searching the internet with my dad. I wrote **facts**⁽³⁾ in my notebook and printed pictures to help explain.

مرحباً! أنا عمر، وأنا أقوم بإعداد مشروع بحثي لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية عن الموارد المصنوعة من قبل الإنسان. بدأت بقراءة كتاب والبحث في الإنترنت مع والدي. كتبت حقائق في دفتر ملاحظاتي وطبعت صوراً للمساعدة في الشرح.

Man-made resources are things people create using **natural materials**⁽⁴⁾. For example, plastic is made from oil and used for **bottles**⁽⁵⁾, toys, and **school supplies**⁽⁶⁾. Glass is made from sand and used in windows, mirrors, and cups. One interesting resource I learned about is bricks, made by mixing clay and water, then dried or baked. They are used to build houses, schools, and **walls**⁽⁷⁾.

الموارد المصنوعة من قبل الإنسان هي أشياء يصنعها البشر باستخدام مواد طبيعية. على سبيل المثال، البلاستيك يُصنع من النفط ويُستخدم في صناعة الزجاجات، والألعاب، واللوازم المدرسية. الزجاج يُصنع من الرمل ويُستخدم في النوافذ، والمرايا، والأكواب. أحد الموارد المثيرة للاهتمام التي تعلمت عنها هو الطوب، الذي يُصنع عن طريق خلط الطين والماء، ثم تجفيفه أو خبزه. ويُستخدم لبناء المنازل، والمدارس، والجدران.

Paper is made from trees and **processed**⁽⁸⁾ in **factories**⁽⁹⁾ for writing and reading. People also **recycle**⁽¹⁰⁾ paper to make notebooks and newspapers.

To complete my project, I drew pictures of each resource and shared **helpful tips**⁽¹¹⁾, such as recycling plastic, **reusing**⁽¹²⁾ paper, and using **cloth bags**⁽¹³⁾ instead of plastic ones. Doing research was an important part of my work because it helped me understand new ideas, find accurate information, and learn more about the world around me.

الورق يُصنع من الأشجار ويُعالج في المصانع حتى يصلح للكتابة والقراءة. كما يقوم الناس بإعادة تدوير الورق لصنع الدفاتر والصحف. لإكمال مشروعي، قمت برسم صور لكل مورد وشاركت نصائح مفيدة، مثل إعادة تدوير البلاستيك، وإعادة استخدام الورق، واستخدام الحقائب المصنوعة من القماش بدلاً من البلاستيكية. كان البحث جزءاً مهماً من عملي لأنه ساعدني على فهم أفكار جديدة، وإيجاد معلومات دقيقة، ومعرفة المزيد عن العالم من حولي.

Arabic Meaning

١. يجري مشروع بحثي
٢. موارد صناعية
٣. حقائق
٤. مواد طبيعية
٥. زجاجات
٦. لوازم مدرسية
٧. حوائط
٨. يتم تصنيعه
٩. مصانع
١٠. تدوير
١١. نصائح مفيدة
١٢. إعادة استخدام
١٣. أكياس من القماش

Look and read then make a fact file:

انظروا اقرأ ثم انشئ ملف حقائق:

Reading



The High Dam السد العالي

What is the High Dam? لماذا بناه المصريون؟

The High Dam is a **huge**⁽¹⁾ wall that **crosses**⁽²⁾ the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It **holds**⁽³⁾ a large **lake**⁽⁴⁾ called Lake Nasser. The dam stops the river from **flooding**⁽⁵⁾ and keeps water for people to use **during**⁽⁶⁾ the year.

السد العالي هو جدار ضخم يقطع مجرى نهر النيل في مدينة أسوان، بمصر. يحتجز السد بحيرة كبيرة تسمى بحيرة ناصر. يمنع السد النهر من الفيضان ويحتفظ بالمياه ليستخدمها الناس على مدار العام.

Why did Egyptians build it? لماذا بناه المصريون؟

They built the High Dam to **solve problems**⁽⁷⁾ with flooding and **drought**⁽⁸⁾. They also wanted to give people **clean electricity**⁽⁹⁾ and help farmers grow more crops with **regular**⁽¹⁰⁾ water.

بنى المصريون السد العالي لحل مشكلتي الفيضان والجفاف. كما أرادوا تزويد الناس بالكهرباء النظيفة ومساعدة المزارعين على زراعة المزيد من المحاصيل بمياه منتظمة.

When did Egyptians build it? متى بناه المصريون؟

Egyptians built the High Dam in Aswan between 1960 and 1970. It was **officially**⁽¹¹⁾ completed and opened in 1970. It took **around**⁽¹²⁾ ten years to build. Now, it helps Egypt with water and electricity every day.

بنى المصريون السد العالي في أسوان بين عامي ١٩٦٠ و ١٩٧٠ وقد تم الانتهاء منه وافتتاحه رسميًا في عام ١٩٧٠. استغرق بناؤه حوالي عشر سنوات. واليوم، يساعد مصر في توفير المياه والكهرباء يوميًا.

How does the High Dam help people? كيف يساعد السد العالي الناس؟

The High Dam helps people **in many ways**⁽¹³⁾. Farmers use the water for **irrigation**⁽¹⁴⁾, to grow vegetables, fruits, and **grains**⁽¹⁵⁾ all year. The dam also **sends**⁽¹⁶⁾ electricity to houses, schools, hospitals, and factories **across**⁽¹⁷⁾ Egypt. It protects cities from dangerous floods, and it makes sure people have water even when the river is **low**⁽¹⁸⁾.

يساعد السد العالي الناس بطرق عديدة. يستخدم المزارعون المياه للري، لزراعة الخضروات والفواكه والحبوب على مدار السنة. كما يرسل السد الكهرباء إلى المنازل والمدارس والمستشفيات والمصانع في جميع أنحاء مصر. إنه يحمي المدن من الفيضانات الخطيرة، ويضمن حصول الناس على المياه حتى عندما يكون منسوب النهر منخفضًا.

Arabic Meaning

١. ضخم
٢. يعبر
٣. يحتوي
٤. بحيرة
٥. الفيضان
٦. أثناء
٧. يحل مشاكل
٨. الجفاف
٩. كهرباء نظيفة
١٠. منتظم
١١. رسميًا
١٢. حوالي
١٣. بطرق عديدة
١٤. الري
١٥. حبوب
١٦. يرسل
١٧. عبر
١٨. منخفض

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What are man-made resources?

- ☐ a Things from nature. ☐ b Things people make.
☐ c Animals and plants. ☐ d Rivers and mountains.

2. Which of these is a man-made resource?

- ☐ a A tree ☐ b The sun ☐ c A rock ☐ d A car

3. How do people make man-made resources?

- ☐ a They grow them. ☐ b They build them with tools.
☐ c They find them in the ground. ☐ d They are born with them.

4. Which of these is NOT a man-made resource?

- ☐ a A book ☐ b A chair ☐ c The moon ☐ d A plastic bottle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. The blue whale is a sea animal. It's very big.

- ☐ a small ☐ b tiny ☐ c huge ☐ d little

2. After the storm, the covered the streets with water.

- ☐ a sunshine ☐ b flooding ☐ c snow ☐ d wind

3. Farmers grow like rice and grains to eat.

- ☐ a toys ☐ b shoes ☐ c clouds ☐ d crops

4. The system brings water to dry fields.

- ☐ a irrigation ☐ b fire ☐ c music ☐ d vegetable

5. We use to turn on lights and TVs.

- ☐ a food ☐ b information ☐ c electricity ☐ d sand

6. I need to this picture so I can hold it in my hand.

- ☐ a print ☐ b write ☐ c hide ☐ d swim

7. My friend is because she shares her toys with other children.

- ☐ a unkind ☐ b loud ☐ c helpful ☐ d sleepy

8. A long means no rain for many days or months.

a flood

b drought

c party

d storm

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

electricity - protects - make - across - crops

The High Dam in Egypt is a very important building. It was built to solve problems with flooding. Engineers did research before building it to ① sure it would help. Now, it keeps water in a big lake and gives ② to many places across Egypt. The dam helps farmers grow ③ and protects homes.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. about - doing - resources - I'm - a research - man-made.

.....

2. and - Bricks - mixing - by - are - water - made - clay.

.....

3. built - to solve - problems - They - the High Dam - with flooding.

.....

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Water

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

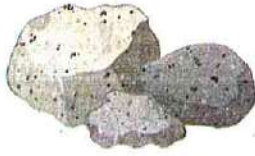
all living things - drinking

Review



on Unit 4

Key vocabulary



granite

الجرانيت



colored stones

احجار الملونة



gold

الذهب



clay

الصلصال / طين



papyrus

ورق البردي



bricks

طوب



temple

معبد



amulet

تميمة



iron

حديد



rock

صخر

material

مادة خام

ancient

قديم

decorate

يزين

wrap

يُغلف

modern / recent

معاصر / حديث

linen

كتان

stone

حجر

solar power

الطاقة الشمسية

minerals

المعادن

solar panels

الواح الطاقة الشمسية

natural

غير صناعي / طبيعي

gas

الغاز

oil

البترو / النفط

jewelry

المجوهرات

natural resources

الموارد الطبيعية

man-made

صناعي

resources

مصادر / موارد

recycle

يعيد تصنيع

pollute

يلوث

huge

ضخم

harm	يؤذي / يضر	flooding	الفيضان
climate	المناخ	crops	المحاصيل
protect	يحمي	irrigation	الري
waste	يهدر	electricity	الكهرباء

Conjugation of verbs نصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
survive	يبقى
decorate	يزين
wrap	يغلف
carve	ينحت
turn off	يطفى
contain	يحتوي على
develop	ينمو / يتطور
process	يصنع

Past ماض

survived
decorated
wrapped
carved
turned off
contained
developed
processed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
write	يكتب
wear	يرتدي
light	يضيء
sell	يبيع
bring	يجلب
build	يبني
understand	يفهم
keep	على يحافظ

Past ماض

wrote
wore
lit / lighted
sold
brought
built
understood
kept

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Modal Verbs: Must / Mustn't / Should / Shouldn't

1. Must + inf.: يجب ان

يستخدم الفعل الناقص (must) متبوعاً بفعل في المصدر بدون (to) للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام لنقول أن شيء مهم أو قانون:

- You **must** turn off the lights to save energy.

2. Mustn't + inf.: يجب لا

يستخدم الشكل المنفي للفعل (mustn't) متبوعاً بفعل في المصدر بدون (to) للتعبير عن الحظر أو المنع.

- You **mustn't** throw rubbish on the ground.

3. Should + inf.: يجب ان - يُنصح بأن

يستخدم الفعل (should) متبوعاً بفعل في المصدر بدون (to) للتعبير عن النصيحة أو لذكر فكرة جيدة:

- You **should** walk to school if it's close.

4. Shouldn't + inf.: لا يُنصح بأن / يجب ألا

يستخدم الشكل المنفي للفعل (shouldn't) متبوعاً بفعل في المصدر بدون (to) للتعبير عن النصيحة

بعدم فعل شيء أو لذكر أن الفكرة غير جيدة:

- You **shouldn't** waste water when washing your hands.



Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 1

Ancient Egypt

The ancient Egyptians were clever with materials. They used stones like granite and stones for huge temples and pyramids. Using clay from the Nile River, they made pots and bricks. Gold was used for making jewelry. They also used wood, but it was less common. Many of these materials are still used today.

Lesson 2

Solar energy

Solar energy comes from the sun. It is a clean and free source of power. People use solar panels to collect sunlight and make electricity. Solar energy helps us light homes, heat water, and run machines. It does not pollute the air because it's clean and green, so it is good for the Earth.

Lessons 4 & 5

Water

Water is very important for all living things. People, animals, and plants need water to live. We use water for drinking, cooking, and cleaning. Water comes from rivers, lakes, and rain. We must save water and keep it clean so everyone can have enough now and in the future.

Al-Azhar Test

The High Dam

The High Dam is in Aswan, Egypt. It was built between 1960 and 1970. The dam protects the land from floods and keeps water for dry times. It helps farmers get water to grow their crops. The High Dam also makes electricity for homes and factories.

Test on Unit 4

Aswan

Aswan is a city in the south of Egypt. It has many ancient temples. It's also famous for the High Dam, which helps save water and make electricity. Many tourists visit Aswan to see the Nile and old temples. The winter in Aswan is warm, so people enjoy going there.

Al-Azhar Test

امتحان خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

tell - planet - solar - waste - pollute

Ali : Hi Sara! What are you doing?

Sara : I'm reading about saving our ①

Ali : That's cool! How can we help the planet?

Sara : We should not ② water or energy.

Ali : Do modern things like cars ③ the air?

Sara : Yes, they do. We need clean energy like ④ power.

Ali : Can we continue learning about this?

Sara : Sure! It's good to learn and ⑤ others to help too.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

①	mummies	pollution	bottles	protect	-----
②	climate	granite	clay	gold	-----
③	ancient	stone	pyramid	temple	-----
④	print	explain	solve	problem	-----
⑤	gas	oil	water	wrap	-----

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. On our farm, we grow some for food.

- a** amulets **b** temples **c** statues **d** crops

2. People protect the Nile River.

- a** don't **b** shouldn't **c** must **d** mustn't

3. We use to light our houses.

- a** pollution **b** information **c** electricity **d** the moon

Unit 4 Resources around us

4. You stay calm during lessons.

- a** should **b** mustn't **c** shouldn't **d** should to

5. Ancient Egyptians used to make cloth.

- a** jewelry **b** glass **c** papyrus **d** linen

6. You drink cola. It's unhealthy.

- a** should **b** must **c** can **d** shouldn't

7. Ancient Egyptians huge statues from granite.

- a** carved **b** wasted **c** played **d** printed

8. You wear a helmet when you ride a bike.

- a** must **b** mustn't **c** shouldn't **d** can't

9. Don't water when you take a shower.

- a** use **b** harm **c** waste **d** close

10. He must rules.

- a** follows **b** following **c** followed **d** follow

4 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ahmed. When I was younger, my favorite toy was the skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends, they had skateboards, too, and it was really fun. We all wanted to go fast! My skateboard was black with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was seven, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What was Ahmed's favourite toy?

2. Where did Ahmed love going?

3. What color was Ahmed's skateboard?

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. Ahmed had to wear a / an and knee pads on his skateboard.

- a** helmet **b** umbrella **c** shirt **d** sticker

5. Ahmed's skateboard had orange and yellow

- a** wheels **b** pads **c** stickers **d** hats

5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات التالية لتكون جملاً صحيحة :

1. protects - Dam - floods - High - Egypt - The - from.

2. resources - our - waste - shouldn't - We - natural.

3. Can - cars - pollute - the - air?

4. Ancient - What - Egyptians - use - did - to - mummies - wrap?

5. is - need - every day - something - Energy - we.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥) جمل عن :

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

The High Dam

Aswan - between 1960 and 1970 - protects - keeps water - electricity

Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة ،

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Why is saving water important?
 a To make more food b To help people, animals, and plants
 c To clean the streets d To play with water
- When should we turn off the tap?
 a While swimming b While watching TV
 c While reading a book d While brushing our teeth
- What should we fix to save water?
 a taps b Windows c Doors d Lights
- What do we use water for?
 a Running b Sleeping c Cooking d Flying

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة ،

- The High Dam protects Egypt from floods and
 a air b droughts c crops d electricity
- People put solar on the roof to get energy from the sun.
 a windows b fans c curtains d panels
- Wood, metal, and stone are all building
 a games b toys c materials d clothes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار،

energy - polluted - lasted - daily

Climate change is a big problem for our world. It can make ① life harder with too much heat or rain. We must save ② and keep the air clean. Long ago, people built temples that ③ many years. Today, we build huge cities, so we must take care of the planet.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Recycling is a way to help the Earth. When we recycle, we use things like paper, plastic, and glass again. This helps reduce waste and keeps the planet clean. People can recycle at home, at school, and in their city. Special bins are used for recycling different things. Recycling also saves energy and protects animals and nature. It is easy to do and very helpful. Everyone, even children, can recycle. We should not throw away things we can use again. By recycling, we make the world a better place to live for all people, animals, and plants.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is recycling?

a Throwing away trash

b Using things again

c Planting trees

d Cleaning the house

2. What do we need to recycle?

a paper

b glass

c plastic

d a, b and c

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is recycling good for the Earth?

4. Where can people recycle?

5. Who can recycle?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence:

ضع الكلمات في ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملة:

1. Egyptians - huge - **Ancient** - carved - stones - from granite.

.....

2. research - information - for - find - did - **Where** - your - you?

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You (**must**) throw rubbish on the ground.

2. You (**shouldn't**) eat healthy food.

Unit 4 Resources around us

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم الآتي،

1. recycling is very important

2. did you visit the new museum yesterday

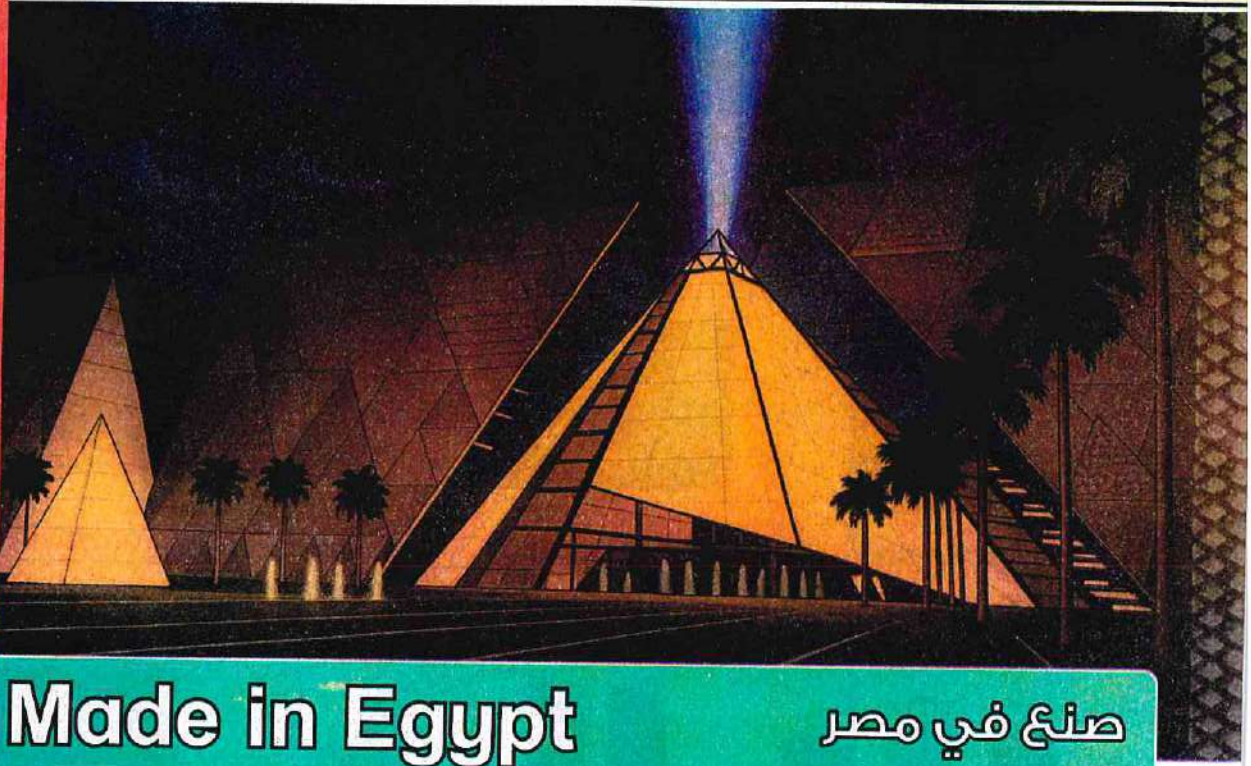
8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن،

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Aswan

south - The High Dam



Made in Egypt

صنع في مصر

Learning Outcomes

Listening:

- Recognize specific information about Egyptian places and projects.
يتعرف الطالب على معلومات محددة حول الأماكن والمشاريع المصرية.
- Identify main ideas in short descriptions of cities.
يحدد الطالب الأفكار الرئيسية في وصف مختصر للمدن.
- Differentiate between the final sounds /d/, /t/ and /Id/ in regular past simple verbs.
يميز الطالب بين الأصوات النهائية /Id/ و /t/ و /d/ في الأفعال المنتظمة في زمن الماضي البسيط.

Speaking:

- Talk about important places and projects in Egypt.
يتحدث الطالب عن الأماكن والمشاريع الهامة في مصر.
- Express opinions about modern cities and clean energy.
يعبر الطالب عن آرائه حول المدن الحديثة والطاقة النظيفة.
- Describe visits to museums or tourist places in Egypt.
يصف الطالب زيارته للمتاحف أو الأماكن السياحية في مصر.

Reading:

- Recognize Egypt's modern and historical projects.
يتعرف الطالب على مشاريع مصر الحديثة والتاريخية.
- Distinguish between facts and opinions in a factual and opinion-based texts.
يميز الطالب بين الحقائق والآراء في النصوص المبنية على الحقائق والآراء.
- Identify specific information related to a reading text.
يحدد الطالب معلومات محددة متعلقة بنص القراءة.

Writing:

- Use past simple in affirmative & negative forms in meaningful sentences.
يستخدم الطالب الماضي البسيط بصيغتيه المثبتة والمنفية في جمل ذات معنى.
- Write a paragraph to express an opinion with reasons and examples.
يكتب الطالب فقرة للتعبير عن رأي مع ذكر الأسباب والأمثلة.
- Create a display board about an object in the Grand Egyptian Museum.
ينشئ الطالب لوحة عرض (مجسم) حول قطعة أثرية في المتحف المصري الكبير.

Lesson

1

★ A Trip Through Time

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المصردات:



passport

جواز سفر



souvenir

هدية تذكارية



exhibition

معرض



information desk

مكتب استعلامات



luggage

حقائب / أمتعة



brochure

كتيب سياحي



travel plan

خطة سفر



guided tour

جولة مصحوبة بمرشد

trip

رحلة

suitcase

حقيرة السفر

Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)

المتحف المصري الكبير

unusual

غير عادي

entrance

مدخل

mask

قناع

location

موقع

mummy

مومياء

spot

موقع - مكان

amazing shows

عروض مذهلة

Other words

كلمات أخرى

a hotel room

حجرة في فندق

tourist

سائح

visitor

زائر

item

شيء - قطعة

test paper

اختبار ورقي

technology

تكنولوجيا

the Solar Boat

المركب الشمسي

ticket

تذكرة

special

خاص - مميز

smart screen

شاشة ذكية

country

دولة

gift shop

محل هدايا

sheet

ورقة

swimming pool

حمام سباحة

Lesson 1

pharaohs	فراعنة	temple	معبد
wonders	عجائب	history	تاريخ
statue	تمثال	experience	خبرة
modern	حديث	golden jewelry	مجوهرات ذهبية

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

I'd like to + inf	أود أن	in a special way	بطريقة مميزة
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	from the beginning to the end	من البداية للنهاية
get help	يحصل على مساعدة	in a fun way	بطريقة ممتعة
on a trip	في الرحلة		
belonged to	يخص		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

locate	يقع
pack	يعبئ
finish	ينتهي
enter	يدخل
book	يحجز
board	يصعد علي متن
explore	يستكشف

Past ماض

located
packed
finished
entered
booked
boarded
explored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

fly	يسافر جوا
buy	يشترى
stand	يقع
take	يستغرق
tell	يخبر
sleep	ينام
build	يبني

Past ماض

flew
bought
stood
took
told
slept
built

Study the following

- 1 Egypt is one of the oldest countries in the world. - مصر من أقدم الدول في العالم.
- 2 Tourists come to explore the wonders of this unusual land. - يأتي السياح لاستكشاف عجائب هذه الأرض الاستثنائية.
- 3 Work on the museum took almost 20 years to finish. - استغرق العمل في المتحف ما يقرب من ٢٠ عاماً للانتهاء منه.
- 4 The museum also uses modern technology, like smart screens and amazing shows. - يستخدم المتحف أيضاً التكنولوجيا الحديثة، مثل الشاشات الذكية والعروض المذهلة.
- 5 There is an information desk where visitors can ask questions. - يوجد مكتب استعلامات حيث يمكن للزوار طرح الأسئلة.
- 6 The Grand Egyptian Museum is not just a building. - المتحف المصري الكبير ليس مجرد مبنى.
- 7 One of the newest and most exciting places to visit is the Grand Egyptian Museum. - من أحدث الأماكن وأكثرها إثارة للزيارة هو المتحف المصري الكبير.

Unit 5 Made in Egypt

8 The museum was built in this spot so visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in one trip.

- بُني المتحف في هذا الموقع ليتمكن الزوار من الاستمتاع بمصر القديمة والحديثة في رحلة واحدة.

9 Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real mummies, and even the Solar Boat that belonged to King Khufu.

- يمكن للزوار مشاهدة التماثيل والمجوهرات الذهبية والأدوات والمومياء الحقيقية، وحتى مركب الملك خوفو الشمسي.

Listen and answer the following question

استمع وأجب عن الأسئلة الآتية :

استمع إلى النص :



Tape Script

Why is the location of the Grand Egyptian Museum special?

"لماذا يُعتبر موقع المتحف المصري الكبير مميزاً؟"

The Grand Egyptian Museum

Egypt is one of the oldest countries in the world. It has pyramids, ancient temples, strong pharaohs⁽¹⁾, and amazing stories from history. Each year, tourists from many countries come to explore the wonders of this unusual⁽²⁾ land. In Egypt, history lives in every corner.



تُعتبر مصر من أقدم الدول في العالم، فيها أهرامات، ومعابد قديمة، وفراعنة أقوياء، وقصص رائعة من التاريخ. كل سنة، يزور مصر سياح من دول كثيرة ليستمتعوا بعجائب هذا البلد المميز. في مصر، التاريخ موجود في كل مكان.

One of the newest and most exciting places to visit is the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM). Work on the museum took almost 20 years to finish. It stands near the Pyramids in Giza, the museum was built in this spot⁽³⁾ so visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in one trip.

واحد من أحدث وأجمل الأماكن التي يمكن زيارتها هو المتحف المصري الكبير، استغرق بناء المتحف حوالي ٢٠ سنة. يوجد المتحف بالقرب من الأهرامات في الجيزة. تم اختيار هذا المكان حتى يستطيع الزوار رؤية مصر القديمة والحديثة في نفس الزيارة.

Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real mummies⁽⁴⁾, and even the Solar Boat⁽⁵⁾ that belonged to King Khufu. The objects are shown in a special way that tells the story of Egypt from the beginning to the end of the time of the pharaohs.

يمكن للزوار رؤية تماثيل، ومجوهرات ذهبية، وأدوات، ومومياء حقيقية، وحتى قارب الشمس الخاص بالملك خوفو، تُعرض هذه الأشياء بطريقة مميزة تحكي قصة مصر منذ البداية وحتى نهاية زمن الفراعنة.

At the entrance⁽⁶⁾, there is an information desk where visitors can ask questions or get help. The museum also uses modern technology, like smart screens and amazing shows⁽⁷⁾ to help people learn in a fun way. The Grand Egyptian Museum is not just a building; It is a place where Egypt's story.

عند مدخل المتحف، هناك مكتب معلومات يمكن للزوار أن يسألوا فيه أو يطلبوا المساعدة. كما يستخدم المتحف التكنولوجيا الحديثة، مثل الشاشات الذكية والعروض الرائعة، لمساعدة الناس على التعلم بطريقة ممتعة. المتحف المصري الكبير ليس مجرد مبنى، بل هو مكان يحكي قصة مصر.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- فراعنة
- ٢- غير عادي
- ٣- مكان
- ٤- مومياءات
- ٥- مركب شمسي
- ٦- مدخل
- ٧- عروض مذهلة.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- I went to the Grand Egyptian Museum last
☐ a spring ☐ b fall ☐ c winter ☐ d summer
- Work on the museum took almost years to finish.
☐ a 20 ☐ b 25 ☐ c 30 ☐ d 35
- It stands near the in Giza.
☐ a Sphinx ☐ b temple ☐ c Pyramids ☐ d museum
- Visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in
☐ a two trips ☐ b one trip ☐ c three trips ☐ d four trips

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Hello! I'd like to a hotel room, please. SB
☐ a fly ☐ b pack ☐ c book ☐ d board
- They will to Aswan next year. SB
☐ a pack ☐ b fly ☐ c sell ☐ d buy
- Do you have the ticket to the plane? SB
☐ a board ☐ b book ☐ c pack ☐ d desk
- Let's our clothes in these suitcases. SB
☐ a book ☐ b fly ☐ c board ☐ d pack
- Our teacher gave us a with times and places for the trip. SB
☐ a travel plan ☐ b test paper ☐ c storybook ☐ d math sheet
- I went to the when I didn't know where to go. SB
☐ a toy shop ☐ b information desk
☐ c swimming pool ☐ d bedroom
- I bought a small pyramid as a from the gift shop. SB
☐ a painting ☐ b color ☐ c souvenir ☐ d sport
- We saw a mummy in the new at the museum. SB
☐ a exhibition ☐ b class ☐ c playground ☐ d hospital

Unit 5 Made in Egypt

9. You need yourto enter another country.

- a** luggage **b** exhibition **c** brochure **d** passport

10. Thehad pictures of beautiful beaches.

- a** brochure **b** trip **c** tour **d** passport

11. The museum offers a/anevery hour.

- a** plans **b** advice **c** information **d** guided tour

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار.

souvenir - packed - board - luggage

I am John. I went with my family to Cairo to visit some exciting places there. My mum **1** our clothes in our suitcases. We have tickets to **2** the plane. You must have a passport. We booked two hotel rooms in Cairo. We visited the Grand Egyptian Museum and many other exciting places. I bought a **3** from the gift shop.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

Egypt is one of the oldest countries in the world. It has many exciting places. Each year, tourists from many countries come to explore the wonders of this unusual land. The Grand Egyptian Museum is one of the newest and most exciting places to visit. It took almost 20 years to finish the museum. It stands near the Pyramids in Giza. It was built in this spot so visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in one trip. Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real mummies, and even the Solar Boat that belonged to King Khufu.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about

- a** the oldest countries **b** exciting places
c the Pyramids **d** the Grand Egyptian Museum

2. The underlined word "spot" means

- a** place **b** wonder **c** museum **d** boat

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why was The Grand Egyptian Museum built in this place?

4. How long did it take to finish the museum?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. the Pyramids - stands - Giza - The museum - near - in

2. Why - the museum - is - of - the location - special?

3. the museum - They - the Solar - visited - to see - Boat.

4. take - did - the museum - it - finish - How long - to?

5. King - belonged - The Solar - to - Boat - Khufu.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I didn t know where to go

2. do you have the ticket to board the plane

7 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

The Grand Egyptian Museum

stands - visitors

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



dream	حلم	cable car	تلفريك
environment	بيئة	plateau	هضبة
peaceful	هاديء	luxury	فاخر
government	حكومة	water park	ملاهي مائية
transport links	خطوط النقل	vision	رؤية
sustainable	صديق للبيئة - مستدام	main attractions	معالم سياحية رئيسية
smart cities	مدن ذكية	overcrowded	شديد الازدحام
comfortable	مريح		



Other words

كلمات أخرى

beach	شاطيء	national	قومي
mountain	جبل	crowding	ازدحام
wonder	عجيبة	view	منظر
leading	بارز	center	مركز
university	جامعة	education	تعليم
abroad	الخارج	area	منطقة
medicine	الطب	empty	فارغ
engineering	الهندسة	businesses	اعمال تجارية / شركات
the Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط		



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

come true	يصبح حقيقة	(be) allowed to	مسموح بـ
part of	جزء من	compared to	مقارنة بـ
full of life	ملئمة بالحياة	take photos	يلتقط صور
(be) located on	تقع على	prove to	يثبت ان

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

prove	يثبت
reduce	يقلل
welcome	يرحب
move	ينتقل
plan	يخطط
devise	يصمم / يشيد
offer	يقدم

Past ماضٍ

proved
reduced
welcomed
moved
planned
devised
offered

Present مضارع

teach	يعلم
run	يدير
build	يبنى
take	يلتقط

Past ماضٍ

taught
ran
built
took

Study the following

- 1 Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt. - مدينة الجلالة هي مدينة حديثة في مصر.
- 2 It was built on the Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna. - بنيت على هضبة الجلالة بالقرب من العين السخنة.
- 3 It was part of a national plan devised in 2015. - انها جزء من خطة قومية صممت في سنة ٢٠١٥.
- 4 It is one of Egypt's leading smart cities with clean air and sea views. - انها واحدة من المدن الذكية البارزة في مصر، وتتميز بهواء نقي وإطلالات بحرية.
- 5 Galala is also a center for education and science. - تعتبر الجلالة ايضا مركزا للتعليم والعلوم.
- 6 Galala University welcomes students from Egypt and abroad. - ترحب جامعة الجلالة بالطلاب من مصر والخارج.
- 7 The area was empty, but now it is full of life. - المدينة كانت فارغة لكنها الان فهي مليئة/مفعمة بالحياة.
- 8 More families are moving in to enjoy its peaceful environment. - تنتقل المزيد من العائلات للعيش فيها للاستمتاع ببيئتها الهادئة.
- 9 The government plans to build more homes, parks, and transportation links. - تخطط الحكومة لبناء المزيد من المنازل والحدائق وخطوط النقل.
- 10 Galala is a great example of Egypt's vision for smart cities. - تُعد الجلالة مثالا رائعا لرؤية مصر للمدن الذكية.

1 Read the text

اقرأ النص:

How does Al Galala City prove to be a wonder?

استمع إلى النص:



Al Galala: Egypt's City Above The Clouds

مدينة الجلالة: مدينة مصرية فوق السحاب

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt, built on the **Galala Plateau**⁽¹⁾ near Ain Sokhna. It was part of a national plan **devised**⁽²⁾ in 2015 to reduce crowding in older cities. Today, it is one of Egypt's leading smart cities with clean air and sea views.

Arabic Meaning

١- هضبة الجلالة

٢- صممت

٣- فاخر

٤- اعمال تجارية

مدينة الجلالة هي مدينة حديثة في مصر، تم بناؤها على هضبة الجلالة بالقرب من العين السخنة. كانت جزءاً من خطة وطنية بدأت في عام 2015 لتقليل الزحام في المدن القديمة. واليوم، تعتبر مدينة الجلالة من أهم المدن الذكية في مصر. وتتميز بهوائها النقي وإطلالتها على البحر.

The city has **luxury**⁽³⁾ hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car that offers great views from the mountain to the sea.

في المدينة فنادق فاخرة، وشواطئ جميلة، وحديقة مائية، وتلفريك مشهور يُظهر مناظر رائعة من الجبل حتى البحر.

Al Galala is also a center for education and science. Galala University welcomes students from Egypt and abroad to study medicine, engineering, and more.

الجلالة أيضاً مركز للتعليم والعلم. جامعة الجلالة ترحب بالطلاب من داخل مصر وخارجها لدراسة الطب والهندسة وغيرها من التخصصات.

In the past, the area was empty, but now it is full of life. People work in hotels, teach, or run **businesses**⁽⁴⁾. More families are moving in to enjoy its peaceful environment. The government plans to build more homes, parks, and transportation links. Al Galala is a great example of Egypt's vision for smart, sustainable cities.

في الماضي، كانت المنطقة خالية من الناس، لكن الآن أصبحت مليئة بالحياة. يعمل الناس هناك في الفنادق، أو في التعليم، أو في التجارة، وينتقل المزيد من العائلات للعيش في الجلالة بسبب الهدوء وجمال الطبيعة. وتخطط الحكومة لبناء المزيد من البيوت والحدائق. ووسائل النقل. مدينة الجلالة هي مثال رائع لرؤية مصر في بناء مدن ذكية ومستدامة.

Language notes

Past Simple

الماضي البسيط

Usage

استخدام

⊙ We use the past simple for:

a. actions that started and finished in the past.

- She **baked** a delicious cake yesterday.

b. actions that happened one after another in the past.

- ترتيب الاحداث في الماضي او حكاية قصة في الماضي .

- We **entered** the museum, **took** photos, and bought souvenirs.

c. habits in the past.

- They **played** outside after school every day.

- عادات في الماضي .

Form

التكوين

التصريف الثاني للفعل + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

⊙ يتكون الماضي البسيط من الفعل المنتظم باضافة **d - ed - ied** من الفعل غير المنتظم

١ - اذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف **e** نضيف له **d** فقط

bake → baked

smile → smiled

٢ - اذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف **y** قبله حرف متحرك نضيف **ed**

play → played

٣ - اذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف **y** قبله ساكن نحذف ال **y** ثم نضيف **ied**

study → studied

cry → cried

٤ - اذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك واحد نضاعف الحرف الساكن ثم نضيف **ed**

stop → stopped

٥ - الافعال الغير منتظمة نحفظها كما هي

present	past	present	past
go	ذهب	went	ذهب
eat	يأكل	ate	أكل

- He **visited** his uncle last Friday.

- We **got** a new computer a week ago.

Negative

النفى

تكملة الجملة + فعل مصدر. **did not + inf.** + فاعل

- Noha **didn't clean** the house last night.

- We **didn't get** a new computer a week ago.

Unit 5 Made in Egypt

questions السؤال

السؤال بهل (Yes / No question) ①

تكملة الجملة + فعل مصدر + فاعل + Did

- Did she have a car? - Yes, she did.
- Did they build it in 2020? - No, they didn't.

السؤال بكلمة استفهام: Wh questions ①

تكملة الجملة + فعل في المصدر + inf. + فاعل + Wh word

- Where did he go yesterday? - What time did you get up?

Key words الكلمات الدالة

in the past	في الماضي	ago	منذ	yesterday	بالأمس
last.....(year – month – week...)			السابق	in 2022	في ٢٠٢٢

الفعل (was/ were) to be

Form التكوين

شكل الفعل "to be" في الماضي: ①

I / He / She / It → was

You / We / They → were

Affirmative جمل مثبتة

Ex: I was at the zoo.

Ex: He was my friend.

Negative جمل منفية

I / He / She / It → wasn't

You / We / They → weren't

① لاحظ: لا نستخدم "did" مع was / were.

Did he was at school? (X)

Was he at school? (✓)

Checkup Exercises ✓

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- I (play) football yesterday.
- She (study) hard last week.
- When I was young, I (walk) to school in the morning.
- In the past, the area (is) empty.
- They (are) ready to pack the suitcases last night.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Last....., I went to Al Galala City.

- ☐ a month ☐ b summer ☐ c year ☐ d week

2. It is a modern city in.....

- ☐ a Egypt ☐ b Africa ☐ c Paris ☐ d London

3. It was built on the Galalanear Ain Sokhna.

- ☐ a Plateau ☐ b airport ☐ c mountain ☐ d park

4. It was part of a national plan devised in.....

- ☐ a 2014 ☐ b 2013 ☐ c 2025 ☐ d 2015

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The cable car is one of the main in Al Galala City.

- ☐ a attractions ☐ b action ☐ c plateau ☐ d information

2. Solar power is a/anenergy source.

- ☐ a empty ☐ b unhealthy ☐ c old ☐ d sustainable

3. He worked hard to make hiscome true.

- ☐ a information ☐ b sea ☐ c offers ☐ d dream

4. Theoffers amazing views.

- ☐ a books ☐ b strong ☐ c advice ☐ d cable car

5. The Great Pyramid is an ancientof Egypt.

- ☐ a business ☐ b transport ☐ c tour ☐ d wonder

6. It's hard tobusinesses without good planning.

- ☐ a run ☐ b do ☐ c break ☐ d plant

7.hotels often have swimming pools.

- ☐ a Luxury ☐ b Strong ☐ c Sky ☐ d Empty

8. The governmentto build more homes and parks.

- ☐ a plans ☐ b plants ☐ c breaks ☐ d takes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

links - businesses - vision - peaceful

In the past, the area was empty, but now it is full of life. People work in hotels, teach, or run ❶ More families are moving in to enjoy its ❷ environment. The government plans to build more homes, parks, and transportation ❸

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt, built on the Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna. It was part of a national plan devised in 2015 to reduce crowding in older cities. The city has luxury hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car. It offers great views from the mountain to the sea. Galala University welcomes students from Egypt and abroad to study medicine, engineering, and more. Al Galala is a great example of Egypt's vision for smart, sustainable cities.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about.....

- a** Egypt **b** new cities **c** the Plateau **d** Al Galala City

2. The underlined word "sustainable" means.....

- a** bad **b** expensive **c** eco-friendly **d** messy

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where is Al Galala City?

4. What does the city have?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. the city - is - of - **Now** - life - full

2. its - to enjoy - moving in - environment - peaceful - **They're**.

3. part of - a national plan - devised - **It** was - in 2015.

4. a center for - education and science- is also - **Galala**.

5. and abroad -welcomes -students - **Galala University** - from Egypt.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (words) in bracket:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Did you (**finished**) the report yesterday? SB
2. The teacher (**not be**) at the library yesterday. SB
3. He (**clean**) his new shoes last morning. SB
4. They (**have**) dinner an hour ago. SB
5. (**Do**) you enjoy the trip last week? SB
6. Yesterday, I (**not play**) my favorite video game.
7. We (**watch**) an exciting football match on TV last night.
8. (**Were**) you go to the park last Saturday?
9. What did he (**drank**) after his run?
10. She didn't (**walked**) to the market this morning.
11. Did you work on Sunday last week? - Yes, I..... (**do**)
12. The books (**is**) on the top shelf yesterday.

7 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Al Galala City

a modern city – sustainable

Key vocabulary

استمع الى المفردات:



knowledge	معرفة	unite	يوحد / يربط
beginning	بداية	decision	قرار
middle	وسط	bundle	حزمة
end	نهاية	stick	عصى
moral	مغزي	wisdom	حكمة
character	شخصية	strength	قوة
setting	مكان وزمان القصة	fighter	مصارع
crops	محاصيل		



Other words

كلمات اخرى

single	فردى	kind of	نوع
reason	سبب	alone	بمفردك
together	معا	strong	قوي
against	ضد	son	ابن
village	قرية	along	بطول / بمحاذاة
plenty of	كثير من	wise	حكيم
excited	متحمس	unity	التضامن - الاتحاد
soft	طري - هش	hard	صلب



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

make good decisions	يتخذ قرارات جيدة	work hard	يعمل بجهد
reasons for	اسباب لـ	grow crops	يزرع محاصيل
work together	يعمل معا	worry about	قلق بشأن
argue about	يتجادل بشأن	grow weaker	يزداد ضعفا
unity gives strength	الاتحاد قوة		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
argue يناقش / يجادل	argued	break يكسر - ينكسر	broke
start يبدأ	started	grow يزرع	grew
call ينادي	called	become يصبح	became
tie يربط	tied	feel يشعر	felt
live يعيش	live	fight يتشاجر	fought
fail يفشل	failed	understand يفهم	understood

Definitions

تعريفات

argue يُجادل	give reasons for or against something يقدم أسباباً مع أو ضد شيء ما
bundle حزمة / ربطة	a group of things tied together حزمة - مجموعة من الأشياء مربوطة معاً
strength القوة	being strong أن تكون قوياً
wisdom الحكمة	using your knowledge to make good decisions استخدام معرفتك لاتخاذ قرارات جيدة
unite يَتحِد	to come together أن يجتمع الأشخاص معاً
beginning البداية	This is where a story starts. هذا هو الوقت الذي تبدأ فيه القصة
middle الوسط	This is where the problem or main event happens هذا هو الجزء الذي تحدث فيه المشكلة أو الحدث الرئيسي
setting الزمان والمكان	The place and time of a story تدور فيه القصة
characters الشخصيات	The people or animals in a story الأشخاص أو الحيوانات في القصة
end النهاية	This is where a story ends هذا هو الجزء الذي تنتهي فيه القصة
moral العبرة / مغزى	The lesson we learn from a story الدرس الأخلاقي - الدرس الذي نتعلمه من القصة

Study the following

- 1 Why does the old man use the bundle? - لماذا استخدم العجوز الحزمة؟
- 2 There lived an old man with his three sons. - هناك عاش رجل عجوز مع ابناءه الثلاثة.
- 3 The old man was a farmer who worked hard growing crops on his land. - كان الرجل العجوز فلاحاً يعمل بجد في زراعة المحاصيل في أرضه.
- 4 The farm was big and gave them plenty of food. - كانت المزرعة كبيرة وتوفر لهم الكثير من الطعام.
- 5 This made their father very worried. - ذلك جعل الاب قلق جداً.
- 6 He became more worried about his sons. - اصبح اكثر قلقاً على ابناءه.
- 7 You should stop fighting and work together. - ينبغي ان تتوقفوا عن الشجار وتعملوا سوياً.
- 8 He asked each son to break the bundle. - طلب من كل ابن ان يكسر الحزمة.
- 9 The father united the bundle and gave them single sticks. - فك الاب الحزمة واعطاهم عصي منفردة.
- 10 "You should stop fighting and work together. - عليكم ان تتوقفوا عن القتال وتعملوا معاً.
- 11 If you all unite, you will be strong. - إذا اتحدتم جميعاً، ستكونون أقوياء.
- 12 Each one tried hard, but they failed. - كلٌ منهم حاول جاهداً، لكنه فشل.
- 13 Together, you are strong. But alone, you can be broken easily. - معاً، أنتم أقوياء. لكن بمفردكم، يُمكن كسرکم بسهولة.
- 14 Unity gives strength. They stopped fighting and worked together - الاتحاد القوة. توقفوا عن القتال وعملوا معاً.

8 Listen to the following:

استمع الى الاتى:

استمع إلى النص:



Why does the old man use the bundle?

لماذا استخدم الرجل العجوز الحزمة؟

A long time ago, in a small village along the Nile River, there lived an old man with his three sons. The old man was a farmer who worked hard growing crops on his land. The farm was big and gave them plenty of food, but the three sons were always fighting. They argued about who would water the crops, feed the animals, and who worked the hardest. This made their father very worried.

منذ وقت طويل، في قرية صغيرة على ضفاف نهر النيل، كان هناك رجل عجوز يعيش مع أولاده الثلاثة. كان الرجل العجوز فلاحاً يعمل بجد في زراعة أرضه. كانت المزرعة كبيرة وتوفر لهم الكثير من الطعام، لكن أولاده الثلاثة كانوا دائماً يتشاجرون. كانوا يختلفون على من يروي الزرع، من يطلع الحيوانات، ومن يعمل أكثر من الآخر. هذا الأمر كان يُقلق الأب كثيراً.



As the old man grew weaker, he became more worried about his sons. "My sons," he said, "you should stop fighting and work together. If you all unite, you will be strong". The three sons did not listen to their father.

ومع مرور الوقت، أصبح الأب ضعيفاً وازداد قلقه على أبنائه. فقال لهم: "يا أبنائي، يجب أن تتوقفوا عن الشجار وتعملوا معاً. إذا اتحدتم، ستكونون أقوياء". لكن الأبناء لم يستمعوا إليه.

One day, the father called his sons and showed them a bundle of sticks tied together. He asked each son to break the bundle. Each one tried hard, but they failed. Then, the father untied the bundle and gave them single sticks. The sons broke them easily.

في يوم من الأيام، نادى الأب أبنائه وأراهم حزمة من العصي مربوطة معاً. وطلب من كل واحد منهم أن يحاول كسرها. حاول كل واحد، ولكن لم يستطع أحد كسرها. بعد ذلك، قام الأب بفك الحزمة، وأعطاهم عصي مفردة. فكسروها بسهولة.

"You see," said the father, "these sticks are just like you. Together, you are strong. But alone, you can be broken easily." The father went on saying, "Unity gives strength." From that day on, the sons understood their father's wisdom. They stopped fighting and worked together.

فقال الأب: "أرايتم؟ هذه العصي مثلكم تماماً. عندما تكونون معاً، تكونون أقوياء. ولكن عندما تكونون متفرقين، يمكن كسر كل واحد منكم بسهولة." وأضاف الأب: "الاتحاد قوة". منذ ذلك اليوم، فهم الأبناء حكمة والدهم، وتوقفوا عن الشجار وبدأوا يعملون معاً.



Pronunciation

TIP!

⊙ When we say past tense verbs ending in -ed, we can hear three different sounds:

⊙ عندما نلتق افعال الماضي البسيط التي تنتهي بـ **ed** فيمكن ان نسمع اصوات مختلفة

1. /t/ sound: after words that end with p, k, f, s, ch, sh (voiceless sounds).

١- صوت **t** : بعد الكلمات التي تنتهي بـ **/x / p / k / f / s / ch / sh** (ث) **/gh/th** (الاصوات المهموسة).

Example: liked, watched, kissed.

2. /d/ sound: after words that end with vowels or voiced sounds (like b, g, v, l, m, n, r, z).

٢- صوت **d** : بعد الكلمات التي تنتهي باصوات متحركة أو اصوات مجهورة مثل **b/g/v/l/m n/r/z** (ذ) **/y/w/j/th**

Example: played, cleaned, called.

3. /ɪd/ sound: after words ending with t or d.

٣- صوت **id** : بعد الكلمات المنتهية بـ **t** أو **d**

Example: wanted, needed.

1 Write each word in the correct column:

اكتب كل كلمة في العمود الصحيح تبعا للنطق،

cooked
loved
painted

jumped
watched
visited

washed
played
needed

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
.....		
.....		
.....		

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Yesterday, I visited my.....

- ☐ a father ☐ b teacher ☐ c friend ☐ d grandfather

2. We watched a/anmovie.

- ☐ a funny ☐ b action ☐ c bad ☐ d sad

3. We cooked dinner and cleaned the.....

- ☐ a floor ☐ b house ☐ c roof ☐ d kitchen

4. We wanted to make abut we were too tired.

- ☐ a sandwich ☐ b cake ☐ c pizza ☐ d food

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. A.....is a group of things tied together.

- ☐ a bundle ☐ b story ☐ c moral ☐ d place

2. Please don'twith your sister.

- ☐ a end ☐ b take ☐ c fight ☐ d make

3. We shouldto be stronger.

- ☐ a unite ☐ b strength ☐ c fight ☐ d sleep

4. I always ask my grandmother's advice because she has

- ☐ a wisdom ☐ b fighting ☐ c sports ☐ d feet

5. You should use your knowledge to make good.....

- ☐ a decisions ☐ b information ☐ c screen ☐ d news

6. The place and time of a story is the.....

- ☐ a middle ☐ b end ☐ c characters ☐ d setting

7. Theof the story is to always be kind.

- ☐ a end ☐ b character ☐ c moral ☐ d start

8. The bundle of sticks was hard. I could notit.

- ☐ a break ☐ b share ☐ c unite ☐ d take

9. The sons understood that is strength.

- ☐ a alone ☐ b weak ☐ c unity ☐ d fighting

Unit 5 Made in Egypt

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

break - strong - bundle - unity

My father wanted to teach me a lesson. He gave me a ❶ of sticks and told me to break it. I couldn't do that as it was very hard. My father said you couldn't break it alone. He gave me one stick to try to ❷ it. I could break it easily. He said ❸ gives strength.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

School starts at 7 am every day. Ahmed lives near his school, so he goes to school on foot. He is kind and friendly. He works hard to pass his exams every year. He likes reading, so he goes to the school library twice a week. He hopes to be a doctor because he likes to help sick people. His favorite foods are fish, meat and rice. He helps his mother at home. His favorite sport is football

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about.....
☐ a Ahmed ☐ b school ☐ c foods ☐ d exams
- The underlined word "His" refers to the.....
☐ a doctor ☐ b player ☐ c teacher ☐ d boy

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why does he want to be a doctor?

- How do you know Ahmed is kind and friendly?

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- growing - worked - The old - hard - man - crops.

- plenty of - the family - The farm - gave - food.

3. worried - their - very - This - father - made.

4. son - the bundle - asked - each - to - break - He.

5. wisdom - their - The sons - father's - understood.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. They always argued and didn't work together

2. could the sons break the bundle of sticks

7 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

محباب عنه آخر الوحدة

The old man and a bundle of sticks

a bundle of sticks - break

★ Egypt Goes Green & Think and Create

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



ideal	مثالي	Lotus Chalice	كأس اللوتس
solar energy	طاقة شمسية	ceremony	احتفال / مراسم
Solar Park	محطة الطاقة الشمسية	afterlife	الآخرة
fuel	وقود	development	تطوير
pollution	تلوث	tomb	مقبرة
valuable	ثمين - قيم	funeral rituals	طقوس الجنازة

Other words كلمات أخرى

energy	طاقة	planet	كوكب
forever	للأبد	opinion	رأي
technology	تكنولوجيا	sustainable	صديق للبيئة
sunny	شمس	safe	امن
factory	مصنع	Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر
builder	عامل بناء	toward	تجاه
nature	طبيعة	robot	انسان الى
wind	رياح	eternal life	حياة ابدية
machine	ماكينة	handle	مقبض
symbol	رمز	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
beauty	جمال	training	تدريب
solar stations	محطة طاقة شمسية	local community	مجتمع محلي
green	صديق للبيئة	alabaster	مرمر
A display board	لوحة عرض	King Tutankhamun	الملك توت عنخ امون

Expressions, prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

get energy from	يحصل على الطاقة من	create jobs	يوفر فرص عمل
work with	يتعامل مع	saves money	يدخر المال
ideal for	مثالي لـ	generate electricity	يولد كهرباء
reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث	As a result ,	كنتيجة لـ
In conclusion	في الخاتمة	proud of	فخور بـ
follow Egypt's example	يحتذو حذو مصر		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

destroy	يدمر
support	يدعم - يساند
protect	يحمي
improve	يحسن - يطور
provide	يزود - يمد
create	يخلق
save	يدخر - يوفر
benefit	ينفع
generate	يولد

destroyed
supported
protected
improved
provided
created
saved
benefited
generated

get	يحصل على
bring	يجلب
learn	يتعلم
keep	يحافظ على
build	يبنى
find	يجد

got
brought
learned \ learnt
kept
built
found

Study the following

1 We can get energy from the sun.

يمكننا الحصول على الطاقة من الشمس

2 One important project is Benban Solar Park near Aswan.

أحد المشاريع الكبرى هو محطة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية بالقرب من أسوان

3 It has over 6 million panels and provides electricity to homes etc.

يحتوي على أكثر من 6 ملايين لوح ويوفر الكهرباء للمنازل وغيرها

4 The project is important because it saves money.

هذا المشروع مهم لأنه يوفر المال

5 It helps them learn new skills and improves local communities.

يساعدهم على تعلم مهارات جديدة ويحسن المجتمعات المحلية

6 Benban Solar Park is a smart and valuable project for Egypt.

محطة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية هو مشروع ذكي وقيم لمصر

7 It's a proud step toward a cleaner, better future.

إنها خطوة تدمو للفخر نحو مستقبل أنظف وأفضل

8 Solar energy comes from the sun.

تأتي الطاقة الشمسية من الشمس

9 This chalice is made of alabaster.

هذا الكأس مصنوع من المرمر

10 It was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb.

وجد في مقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون



Read the text.

اقرأ النص:

- Why I think Benban is important?

Eco news Egypt

استمع إلى النص:



BY Marim Mahmoud:

محطة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية

Egypt is a sunny country, making it **ideal**⁽¹⁾ for solar energy. One **important**⁽²⁾ project is Benban Solar Park near Aswan, one of the world's largest solar stations.

مصر بلد مشمس، وهذا يجعلها مكانًا ممتازًا لاستخدام الطاقة الشمسية. من أهم المشروعات في هذا المجال محطة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية، وهي قريبة من أسوان، وتعد من أكبر المحطات الشمسية في العالم.



Built between 2018 and 2019, it has over 6 million panels and **provides**⁽³⁾ electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories.

Benban uses clean, **sustainable**⁽⁴⁾ energy, **reducing**⁽⁵⁾ pollution and keeping the air safe. It also creates thousands of jobs for engineers, builders, and people from nearby villages, helping them support their families.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- مثالي
- ٢- هام
- ٣- يمد
- ٤- مستدام
- ٥- تقليل
- ٦- وفود غالي الثمن
- ٧- ثمين

تم بناء المحطة بين عامي ٢٠١٨ و ٢٠١٩، وتحتوي على أكثر من ٦ ملايين لوح شمسي. توفر الكهرباء

للمنازل، والمدارس، والمستشفيات، والمصانع. تستخدم محطة بنبان طاقة نظيفة ومستدامة، مما يقلل من التلوث ويساعد في الحفاظ على الهواء نظيفًا. كما وفرت المحطة آلاف الوظائف للمهندسين، والعمال، وسكان القرى القريبة، وساعدتهم على دعم أسرهم.

The project is important because it saves money by using sunlight instead of **expensive fuel**⁽⁶⁾, protects the environment, and brings jobs to Upper Egypt. Although some workers need training, it helps them learn new skills and improves local communities.

هذا المشروع مهم لأنه: يوفر المال باستخدام ضوء الشمس بدلاً من الوقود الغالي. يحمي البيئة. يوفر فرص عمل في صعيد مصر.

ورغم أن بعض العمال يحتاجون إلى تدريب، فإن المشروع يساعدهم على تعلم مهارات جديدة، ويُطوّر المجتمعات المحلية.

Benban Solar Park is a smart and **valuable**⁽⁷⁾ project for Egypt. It benefits people, protects nature, and supports development. It's a proud step toward a cleaner, better future.

محطة بنبان مشروع ذكي ومفيد لمصر. فهو يساعد الناس، ويحمي الطبيعة، ويدعم التنمية. إنه خطوة تفخر بها نحو مستقبل أنظف وأفضل.

Look and read about the display board of Lotus Chalice

انظر واقرأ عن لوحة العرض بخصوص كأس اللوتس

- A Display Board about an Object in the Grand Egyptian Museum

Lotus Chalice



This chalice is made of alabaster. It looks like a white lotus flower with two handles. It was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb. Now, it is in the Grand Egyptian Museum. It was used in special ceremonies like funeral rituals. It is a symbol of eternal life and beauty. People believed it helped the king live forever in the afterlife.

"هذه الكأس مصنوعة من المرمر، تبدو كزهرة لوتس بيضاء ذات مقبضين. عُثر عليها في مقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون، وهي الآن معروضة في المتحف المصري الكبير. كانت تُستخدم في الاحتفالات الخاصة مثل طقوس الجنازة. إنها رمز للحياة الأبدية والجمال، وكان يُعتقد أنها تساعد الملك على العيش إلى الأبد في الحياة الأخرى."

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. We can energy from the sun.
☐ a get ☐ b make ☐ c support ☐ d believe
2. The storm many trees.
☐ a planted ☐ b made ☐ c took ☐ d destroys
3. Students work with modern in class.
☐ a eternal life ☐ b rituals ☐ c technology ☐ d air
4. Egypt is for solar energy.
☐ a healthy ☐ b tired ☐ c bored ☐ d ideal
5. Many homes use energy to heat water.
☐ a solar ☐ b light ☐ c dark ☐ d wood
6. The new factory jobs for many people.
☐ a believes ☐ b hides ☐ c creates ☐ d finds
7. Walking instead of driving money.
☐ a saves ☐ b designs ☐ c learns ☐ d draws
8. My grandmother gave me a/an necklace.
☐ a wood ☐ b solar ☐ c bored ☐ d valuable
9. The solar station electricity for the city.
☐ a generates ☐ b loses ☐ c believes ☐ d shows
10. The wedding of my sister was amazing.
☐ a station ☐ b ceremony ☐ c development ☐ d example
11. The of green energy can make the world better.
☐ a development ☐ b losing ☐ c reducing ☐ d missing
12. I am very proud my father because he helps many people
☐ a on ☐ b at ☐ c in ☐ d of
13. Many African countries Egypt's example in creating clean energy.
☐ a come ☐ b destroy ☐ c follow ☐ d plant

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

tomb - new - handles - eternal

This chalice is made of alabaster. It looks like a white lotus flower with two ¹ It was found in King Tutankhamun's ² Now, it is in the Grand Egyptian Museum. It was used in special ceremonies like funeral rituals. It is a symbol of ³ life and beauty.

3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is a sunny country, making it **ideal** for solar energy. One major project is Benban Solar Park near Aswan, one of the world's largest solar stations. It was built between 2018 and 2019. It has over 6 million panels and provides electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories. The project is important because it saves money by using sunlight instead of expensive fuel, protects the environment, and brings jobs to Upper Egypt.

A) Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d:

1. The text is about

a Benban Solar Park

b energy

c expensive fuel

d protecting the environment

2. The underlined word "ideal" means

a clean

b last

c perfect

d bored

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where is Benban Solar Park?

.....

4. Why is the project important?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. villages - **People** - modern - in - with - can - work - technology

.....

Unit 5 Made in Egypt

2. Benban - project - is - Solar - valuable - smart - and - a - Park

3. step - a - better - toward - future - It's - proud - a

4. created - jobs - project - of - thousands - The

5. is - chalice - made - alabaster - of - This

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. It was found in King Tutankhamun s tomb

2. how about going to the solar park

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Benban Solar Park

project - electricity

Review

on Unit 5

Key vocabulary



passport

جواز سفر



souvenir

هدية تذكارية



exhibition

معرض



information desk

مكتب استعلامات



luggage

حقائب / أمتعة



brochure

كتيب سياحي



travel plan

خطة سفر



guided tour

جولة مصحوبة بمرشد

trip	رحلة	peaceful	هاديء
suitcase	حقبة السفر	government	حكومة
Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)	المتحف المصري الكبير	transport links	خطوط النقل
unusual	غير عادي	sustainable	صديق للبيئة - مستدام
entrance	مدخل	smart cities	مدن ذكية
mask	قناع	comfortable	مريح
location	موقع	cable car	تلفريك
mummy	مومياء	plateau	هضبة
spot	موقع - مكان	luxury	فاخر
amazing shows	عروض مذهلة	water park	ملاهي مائية
environment	بيئة	vision	رؤية
		main attractions	معالم سياحية رئيسية

Unit 5 Made in Egypt

overcrowded	شديد الازدحام	Solar Park	محطة الطاقة الشمسية
unite	يوحد / يربط	fuel	وقود
decision	قرار	pollution	تلوث
bundle	حزمة	valuable	ثمين - قيم
stick	عصى	Lotus Chalice	كأس اللوتس
wisdom	حكمة	ceremony	احتفال / مراسم
strength	قوة	afterlife	الآخرة
fighter	مصارع	development	تطوير
ideal	مثالي	tomb	مقبرة
solar energy	طاقة شمسية	funeral rituals	طقوس الجنازة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
locate	يقع
pack	يعبئ
book	يحجز
board	يصعد علي متن
reduce	يقلل
move	ينتقل
devise	يصمم / يشيد
argue	يناقش / يجادل
fail	يفشل
destroy	يدمر
protect	يحمي
improve	يحسن - يطور
create	يخلق
save	يدخر - يوفر
generate	يولد

Past ماض

located
packed
booked
boarded
reduced
moved
devised
argued
failed
destroyed
protected
improved
created
saved
generated

Present مضارع

fly	يسافر جوا
take	يستغرق
sleep	ينام
build	يبنى
bring	يجلب
learn	يتعلم
keep	يحافظ على

Past ماض

flew
took
slept
built
brought
learned \
learnt
kept

Language notes

Past Simple

الماضي البسيط

Usage

استخدام

⊙ We use the past simple for:

⊙ نستخدم الماضي البسيط لـ

- She **baked** a delicious cake yesterday.

- ترتيب الاحداث في الماضي او حكاية قصة في الماضي.

- We **entered** the museum, **took** photos, and bought souvenirs.

- عادات في الماضي.

- They **played** outside after school every day.

Form

التكوين

⊙ يتكون الماضي البسيط من الفعل المنتظم باضافة **d - ed - ied** فاعل (كل الضمائر) + التصريف الثاني للفعل من الفعل غير المنتظم

Negative

النفى

تكملة الجملة + فعل مصدر **did not + inf.** + فاعل

- Noha **didn't clean** the house last night.

questions

السؤال

⊙ السؤال بـ **(Yes / No question)**

تكملة الجملة + فعل مصدر + فاعل **Did +**

- **Did she have** a car?

- **Yes, she did.**

- **Did they build** it in 2020?

- **No, they didn't.**

⊙ السؤال بكلمة استفهام **Wh questions**

تكملة الجملة + فعل في مصدر **Wh word + did + inf.** + فاعل

- Where **did he go** yesterday?

- What time **did you get up**?

Key words

الكلمات الدالة

in the past	في الماضي	ago	منذ	yesterday	بالأمس
last.....(year – month – week...)			السابق	in 2022	في ٢٠٢٢



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

The Grand Egyptian Museum

One of the newest and most exciting places to visit is the Grand Egyptian Museum. Work on the museum took almost 20 years to finish. It stands near the Pyramids in Giza. The museum was built in this spot so visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in one trip.

2

Lesson 2

Al Galala City

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt. It was built on the Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna. It was part of a national plan devised in 2015. It was built to reduce crowding in older cities. It is one of Egypt's leading smart cities with clean air and sea views.

3

Lesson 3

The old man and a bundle of sticks

There was an old man who lived with his three sons. The three sons were always fighting. He advised them to stop fighting and work together. They didn't listen to his advice. One day, the father called his sons and showed them a bundle of sticks tied together. He asked each son to break the bundle. Each one tried hard, but they failed. He said "Unity gives strength." From that day on, the sons understood their father's wisdom and stopped fighting.

4

Lesson 4 & 5

Benban Solar Park

Benban Solar Park is near Aswan. It is one of the world's largest solar stations. It was built between 2018 and 2019. It has over 6 million panels and provides electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories. Benban uses clean, sustainable energy. It helps reduce pollution and keeping the air safe.

5

Al Azhar Test

A visit to the Grand Egyptian Museum

I visited the Grand Egyptian Museum. I went there with my family by car. It is in Giza. It was an amazing place. We saw many ancient objects there. We were very happy.

6

Test

Solar energy

Solar energy is the power that comes from the sun. It's a very clean and renewable source. We use special devices called solar panels to get the sunlight. This electricity can power our homes, schools, and businesses. You might see solar panels on roofs or in solar parks. Using solar energy is good for our planet because it doesn't produce pollution.

Al-Azhar Test

امتحان خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة.

spend - statues - Grand - fine - Where

Ali : Hi, Ahmed. How are you?

Ahmed : Hi, Ali ① _____, thank you.

Ali : Where did you ② _____ your last weekend?

Ahmed : I went to the ③ _____ Egyptian Museum.

Ali : ④ _____ is it?

Ahmed : It is in Giza.

Ali : What did you see there?

Ahmed : I saw many ⑤ _____.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة.

①	bored	amazing	strong	argue	-----
②	does	where	when	why	-----
③	generate	fought	support	believe	-----
④	white	blue	alabaster	orange	-----
⑤	art	London	English	maths	-----

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة.

1. The box came with two _____ for easy carrying.

a handles **b** flowers **c** necklaces **d** books

2. He saw the _____ in her smile.

a amazing **b** proud **c** step **d** beauty

3. It's time to _____ the plane for our trip.

a pack **b** board **c** visit **d** buy

4. We saw a mummy in the new at the museum.
☐ a class ☐ b exhibition ☐ c playground ☐ d hospital
5. We enjoyed a/an evening at home.
☐ a peaceful ☐ b strength ☐ c wisdom ☐ d easy
6. They me a nice present last week.
☐ a give ☐ b gave ☐ c gives ☐ d giving
7. They part of a national plan devised in 2015.
☐ a were ☐ b was ☐ c did ☐ d are
8. Did you to Paris last summer?
☐ a fly ☐ b flying ☐ c flew ☐ d flies
9. In the past, the Galala Plateau empty.
☐ a is ☐ b were ☐ c are ☐ d was
10. Where he go yesterday?
☐ a was ☐ b did ☐ c were ☐ d does

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية :

In a village, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden, there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the giant have?

.....

2. Where do the children play?

.....

3. What are there in the garden?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. The giant lives in a

- ☐ a town ☐ b village ☐ c city ☐ d villa

Unit 5 Made in Egypt

5. There are colorful singing in the trees.

a bees

b cats

c dogs

d birds

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. Egyptian - the Grand - is - of - Museum - special - The location.

.....

2. proves - City - to be - Al Galata - a wonder

.....

3. was - his sons - very - The old man - about - worried

.....

4. We - get - can - energy - the solar - the sun - from

.....

5. flower - looks - a white - The chalice - like - lotus.

.....

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

A visit to the Grand Egyptian Museum

went - statues - amazing - ancient - happy

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Mahmoud wants to be a.....

- ☐ a doctor ☐ b engineer ☐ c teacher ☐ d vet

2. His favorite subjects are and computer studies.

- ☐ a art ☐ b maths ☐ c science ☐ d English

3. He uses a to practice his English.

- ☐ a tablet ☐ b mobile ☐ c screen ☐ d laptop

4. He also likes to use

- ☐ a technology ☐ b money ☐ c books ☐ d pens

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. means using your knowledge to make good decisions.

- ☐ a Bundle ☐ b Wisdom ☐ c Strong ☐ d Story

2. I went to the when I didn't know where to go.

- ☐ a toy shop ☐ b swimming pool
☐ c information desk ☐ d bedroom

3. We need to to reach our goals.

- ☐ a unite ☐ b destroy ☐ c grow ☐ d board

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

environment - guided - communities - sunlight

The project is important because it saves money by using ❶ instead of expensive fuel, protects the ❷, and brings jobs to Upper Egypt. Although some workers need training, it helps them learn new skills and improves local ❸

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Solar energy is green power that comes from the sun. It's a very clean and renewable source, meaning it won't run out. We use special solar panels to get sunlight. These panels are usually made of many smaller pieces **قطع** called solar cells **خلايا**. When sunlight hits these cells, they **generate** electricity. This electricity can then power our homes, schools, hospitals and businesses. Using solar energy is good for our planet because it reduce pollution.

A- Choose the correct answer:

- Solar energy is
☐ a finished ☐ b unhealthy ☐ c polluted ☐ d renewable
- The underlined word "generate" means
☐ a support ☐ b make ☐ c believe ☐ d strength

B- Answer the following questions:

- What is the passage about?

- How can solar energy be useful?

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- is - a modern city - in - Egypt - Al Galala City.

- together - of the story - The moral - is - work - to.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. (Did) Maher at home yesterday?
2. There (are) no homes or roads in the past.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. They go to alex last monday.

2. how did you learn to speak English

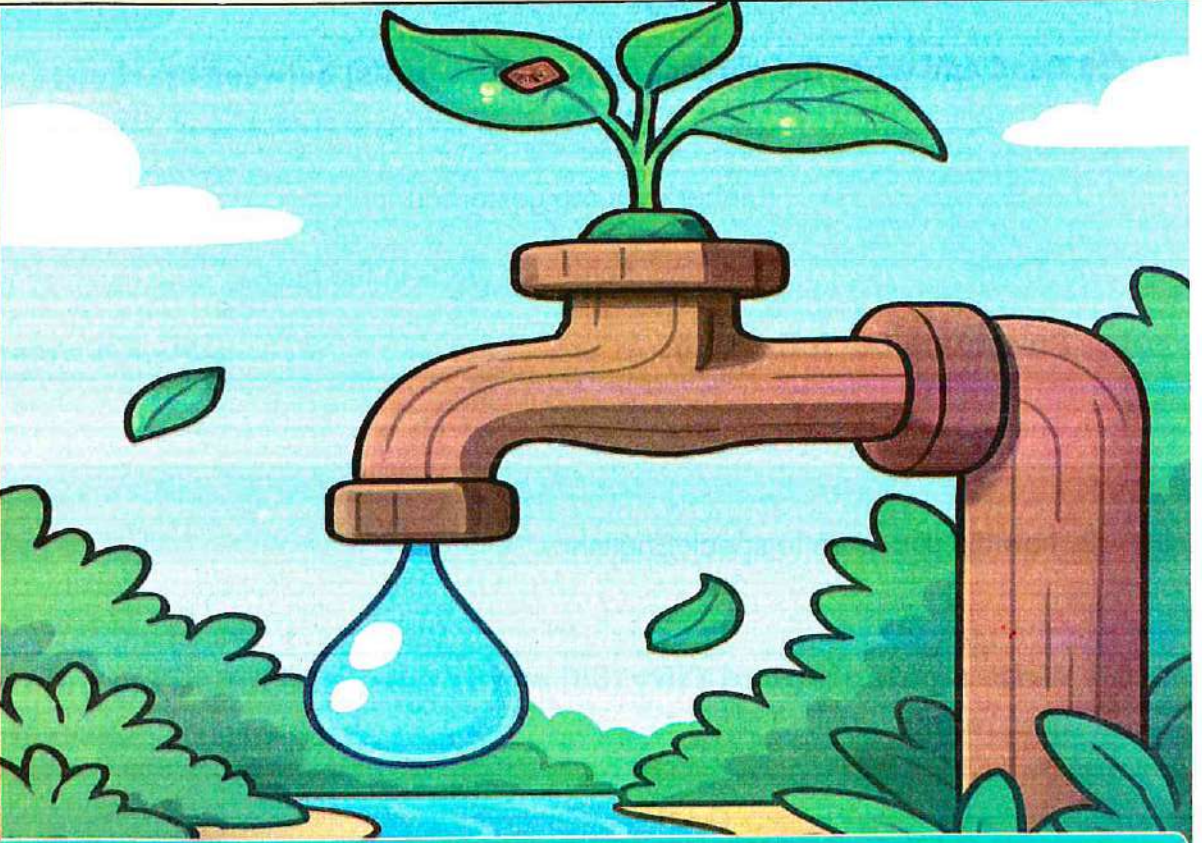
8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Solar energy

important - better future



The Water Savers

موفرّو المياه

Learning Outcomes

Listening & Speaking:

- Participate in pair or group discussions about the story and its moral.
يشارك الطالب في مناقشات ثنائية أو جماعية حول القصة وما تحمله من عبرة.
- Ask and answer simple questions about characters and events.
يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة بسيطة حول الشخصيات والأحداث.
- Role-play short conversations.
يقوم الطالب بتأدية محادثات قصيرة.
- Present ideas clearly with confidence during speaking activities.
يعرض الطالب الأفكار بوضوح وثقة أثناء أنشطة التحدث.

Values:

- Being a good citizen, working together and taking care of resources.
يتعلم الطالب أن يكون مواطناً ويتعلم والعمل الجماعي والعناية بالموارد.

Reading:

- Identify the main characters, setting, and key events in a short story.
يحدد الطالب الشخصيات الرئيسية والمكان والزمان والأحداث الأساسية في قصة قصيرة.
- Retell the sequence of events using their own words.
يعيد الطالب سرد تسلسل الأحداث باستخدام كلماتهم الخاصة.
- Understand the main idea and theme (e.g., environmental responsibility, teamwork).
يفهم الطالب الفكرة الرئيسية والموضوع (مثل المسؤولية البيئية والعمل الجماعي).

Writing:

- Make a poster or write a paragraph using story details and personal ideas.
ينشئ الطالب ملصق أو يكتب فقرة باستخدام تفاصيل القصة والأفكار الشخصية.
- Organize ideas in a logical sequence (beginning, middle, end).
ينظم الطالب الأفكار بتسلسل منطقي (البداية، الوسط، النهاية).

Characters of the story

شخصيات القصة



استمع إلى المفردات:



Noor

نور



Ahmed

أحمد



Farida

فريدة



Mr. Youssef

السيد يوسف

Story Vocabulary

Picture Dictionary

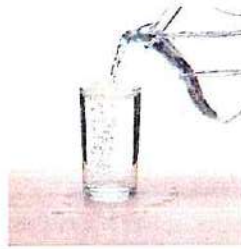


drip

ينقط

overflow

يفيض



puddle

بركة ماء



leak

تسرب

hallway

ممر/رواق



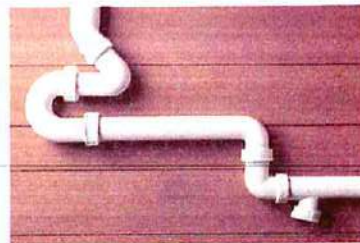
hose

خرطوم



tap

صنبور



pipe

أنبوب (ماسورة مياه)



drop

قطرة

Definitions

تعريفات

dripping	تنقيط	falling in small drops (like water from a tap). يتساقط على شكل قطرات صغيرة (مثل الماء من الصنبور).
precious	ثمين	very valuable; something we must protect. ذو قيمة كبيرة، شيء يجب علينا حمايته.
resources	موارد	natural things that we use, like water, air, or energy الأشياء الطبيعية التي نستخدمها مثل الماء أو الهواء أو الطاقة.
snap (her fingers)	طقطقة (أصابعها)	to make a quick sound with your fingers — a sign of having an idea. إصدار صوت سريع بأصابع اليد - علامة على أنها خطرت له فكرة.
curious	فضولي	wanting to know or learn more. يرغب في معرفة أو تعلم المزيد.
leaky	راشح / مسرب	letting water (or air) escape through a hole or crack. يسمح بخروج الماء (أو الهواء) من خلال ثقب أو شق.
overflow	يفيض	to go over the edge (e.g., when a sink is too full). ينسكب خارج الحافة (مثل عندما يمتلئ الحوض أكثر من اللازم).
puddles	برك	small pools of water on the ground. تجمعات صغيرة من الماء على الأرض.
cheerful	مرح	happy, positive, bright and friendly. سعيد، إيجابي، مشرق وودود.
fix	يصلح	to repair something broken. يصلح شيئاً مكسوراً.
spread	ينتشر	to move to more people or places (like news or ideas). ينتقل إلى مزيد من الناس أو الأماكن (مثل الأخبار أو الأفكار).
mini-challenges	تحديات صغيرة	small, fun competitions to see who can do something best. مسابقات ممتعة صغيرة لمعرفة من يمكنه أداء شيء بأفضل طريقة.

1



In a **bright**⁽¹⁾ and busy school, three friends-Noor, Ahmed, and Farida-were always looking for ways to help. One sunny morning, they **noticed**⁽²⁾ something that made them stop. A tap in the school bathroom kept dripping, even when no one used it. In the garden, water **overflowed**⁽³⁾ from a broken pipe and formed little puddles near the walkway.

"We waste too much water," Noor said, shaking her head. She watched the drops fall one after another, knowing they were too **precious**⁽⁴⁾ to waste.

Ahmed said, "We need to take better care of our resources," he agreed. "We can't afford to be careless."

Farida, always full of ideas, **snapped**⁽⁵⁾ her fingers. "Let's do something about it! We can be Water Savers! We can show everyone that small actions matter."

They went to their teacher's office and **explained**⁽⁶⁾ their plan. "We want to do a project to help our school use water wisely," Noor explained. Their teacher smiled brightly. "That's a wonderful idea. Go for it-and let me know how I can help."

في مدرسة مليئة بالبهجة والحركة، كان هناك ثلاثة أصدقاء: نور، وأحمد، وفريدا. كانوا دائماً يبحثون عن طرق لمساعدة الآخرين.

في صباح مشمس، لاحظوا شيئاً غريباً جعلهم يتوقفون. في حمام المدرسة، كان هناك صنبور يسرب الماء باستمرار حتى عندما لا يستخدمه أحد. وفي الحديقة، كانت هناك ماسورة مكسورة يتدفق منها الماء، فكوّنت بركاً صغيرة قرب الممشى.

قالت نور وهي تنظر إلى قطرات الماء تتساقط واحدة تلو الأخرى: "نحن نهدر الكثير من الماء، وهذا شيء خطير. فكل قطرة ماء ثمينة!"

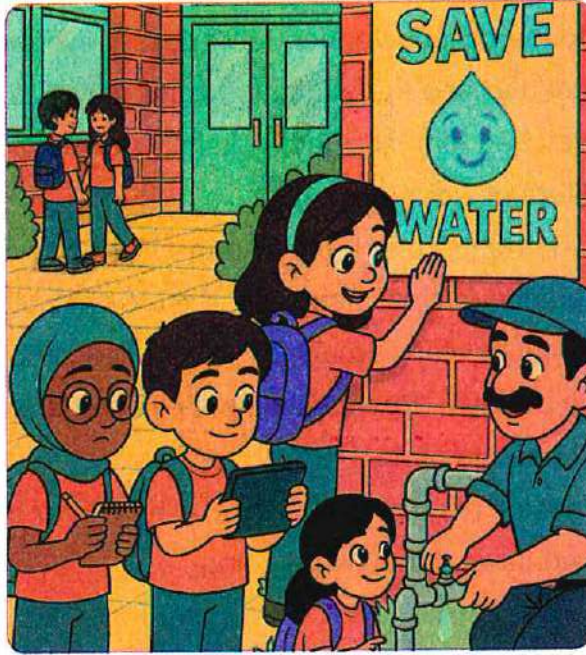
وافقها أحمد قائلاً: "يجب أن نحافظ على مواردنا، لا يمكن أن نكون مهمليين!"
أما فريدا، وكانت دائماً منبع للأفكار، فطقطقت أصابعها وقالت بحماس: "لنقف معاً ونفعل شيئاً! يمكننا أن نطلق على أنفسنا اسم (موفرّو الماء)! ونظهر للجميع أن التصرفات الصغيرة يمكن أن تحدث فرقاً كبيراً."

ذهبوا إلى مكتب المعلمة وأخبروها بخطةهم. قالت نور: "نريد أن نقوم بمشروع يساعد المدرسة على استخدام الماء بطريقة أفضل."

ابتسمت المعلمة وقالت: "فكرة رائعة! ابدأوا بها، وأنا مستعدة لمساعدتكم."

1- bright	مشرفة	2- noticed	لاحظوا	3- overflowed	يفيض
4- precious	ثمينة	5- snapped	طقطقت	6- explained	شرح

2



The next day, the three friends got to work. They started by walking around the school with a notebook, a camera, and curious eyes. Noor wrote down everything she noticed: leaky taps, students leaving water running while washing their hands, and hoses left on too long in the garden.

Ahmed used his tablet to take photos of the problems so they could show them later in their presentations. Farida, the artist, brought⁽¹⁾ out her colored markers and made bright, cheerful posters. One read:

"Turn off the tap while brushing!" Another said: "Every drop counts. Fix leaks⁽²⁾ fast!"

في اليوم التالي، بدأ الأصدقاء الثلاثة العمل بجد. تجولوا في المدرسة ومعهم دفتر ملاحظات، وكاميرا، وعيون مليئة بالفضول.

قامت نور بكتابة كل ما تراه: صنابير تسرب الماء، طلاب يتركون الماء مفتوحًا أثناء غسل أيديهم، وخراطيم في الحديقة تُترك مفتوحة لفترات طويلة.

أما أحمد، فكان يستخدم جهازه اللوحي لالتقاط صور للمشكلات، حتى يتمكنوا من استخدامها لاحقًا في عروضهم التقديمية.

وفريدة، الرسامة، أخرجت أقلامها الملونة وصنعت لافتات جميلة ومبهجة. إحداها كانت تقول: "أغلق الصنبور أثناء تنظيف أسنانك!"

وأخرى كتبت عليها: "كل قطرة تفرق، أصلح التسريبات بسرعة!"

1- brought out

أخرجت

2- leaks

التسريبات

They also spoke to the school cleaner, Mr. Youssef, who was surprised but pleased to see the students taking action. "I'd love your help," he said as they watched him fix a leaking sink⁽³⁾. He explained how a small drip could waste liters of water each day.

The kids listened carefully⁽⁴⁾ and learned a lot. But not everyone understood their role. One afternoon, a classmate said to them unkindly near the hallway. "Why do you care about water so much? It's just a few drops."

Noor looked him in the eye. "Because water is life," she said firmly⁽⁵⁾. "We all need it, and we all need to protect it."

Her friends stood beside her, proud and quiet. They didn't let the bullying stop them. They believed in what they were doing.

كما تحدثوا مع عامل النظافة في المدرسة، السيد يوسف، الذي تفاجأ من حماسهم، لكنه كان سعيدًا جدًا. قال لهم: "يسعدني أن تساعدوني."

وأتناء إصلاحه لحوض كان يسرب الماء، شرح لهم كيف أن نقطة ماء صغيرة قد تهدر لتترات كثيرة يوميًا.

استمع الأطفال باهتمام، وتعلموا أشياء جديدة. لكن لم يفهم الجميع أهمية ما يفعلونه. ففي أحد الأيام، قال لهم زميل بطريقة غير لطيفة في الممر: "لماذا تهتمون كل هذا الاهتمام بالماء؟ إنها فقط قطرات!"

نظرت إليه نور بثبات وقالت: "لأن الماء هو الحياة. كلنا نحتاجه، وكلنا علينا أن نحافظ عليه." وقف أصدقاؤها بجانبها، فخورين، دون أن يقولوا شيئًا. لم يسمحوا للكلمات السلبية أن توقفهم، لأنهم كانوا يؤمنون بما يفعلونه.

3- a leaking sink حوض يتسرب

4- carefully بحرص

بحزم

5- firmly

بحزم

3



Soon, their message began to spread. The school **hung⁽¹⁾** their posters in bathrooms, classrooms, and near garden taps. Teachers took a few minutes each day to talk about how to save water. Some classes even had **mini-certificates⁽²⁾** to see who could save the most!

One morning, the head teacher gave the children, Noor, Ahmed, and Farida **certificates of achievement⁽³⁾** for their hard work. From that day on, everyone at the school became a Water Saver.

سريعا، بدأت رسالتهم تنتشر في كل المدرسة. تم تعليق اللافتات التي صنعوها في الحمامات، والفصول الدراسية، وبالقرب من صنابير الحديقة. وأصبح المعلمون يخصصون بضع دقائق يوميا للحديث عن أهمية ترشيد استهلاك الماء. حتى أن بعض الفصول بدأت مسابقات صغيرة لمعرفة أي الصفوف يوفر الماء أكثر! وفي صباح جميل، قامت المديرية بتكريم الأطفال الثلاثة: نور، وأحمد، وفريدة، ومنحتهم شهادات تقدير على جهودهم الرائعة. ومنذ ذلك اليوم، أصبح جميع من في المدرسة من "موفرو الماء"، يعملون مَعًا للحفاظ على كل قطرة.

1- hung

علقت

2- mini-challenges

تحديات صغيرة

3- certificates of achievement

شهادات تقدير

Characters

1 Read and write who said this?

اقرأ واكتب من قال هذا:

1. "We waste too much water." (Noor)
2. "We need to take better care of our resources." (.....)
3. "Let's do something about it! We can be Water Savers!" (.....)
4. "That's a wonderful idea. Go for it - and let me know how I can help." (.....)
5. "I'd love your help." (.....)

2 Match the words in column (A) with their meanings in column (B).

صل الكلمات في القائمة (A) بمعانيها في القائمة (B).

A	B
1. dripping	a. things we use to live (e.g. water)
2. resources	b. having holes or cracks
3. leaky	c. flowing in small drops

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Noor, Ahmed, and Farida were worried about the water because they

- ☐ a wanted to play in the puddles ☒ b wanted to save water
☐ c disliked the school garden ☐ d wanted to skip class

2. Farida used to make posters.

- ☐ a tablets ☐ b colored markers ☐ c notebooks ☐ d cameras

3. "Every drop counts!" means ".....".

- ☐ a Water is only for drinking ☐ b Even small amounts of water matter
☐ c Rain is coming soon ☐ d Drops are fun to count

4. Mr. Youssef supported the students because too.

- ☐ a he wanted a break ☐ b he cared about saving water
☐ c the teacher asked him ☐ d he liked their posters

4 Read and write T (true) or F (false):

اقرأ واكتب صح أم خطأ:

1. Farida's posters had messages like "Every drop counts."
2. The teacher did not support the students' plan.
3. The school skipped the students' posters and didn't use them.
4. Mr. Youssef helped the students fix a leaking sink.
5. Noor said, "Water is life" when a classmate bullied her.
6. Some classes had mini-challenges to save water.

True False

☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

5 Read and put the events in order:

اقرأ وضع الاحداث في الترتيب الصحيح:

- ☐ The teacher was excited about the project.
- ☒ 1 The friends see water leaking in the bathroom.
- ☐ The students make posters and take photos.
- ☐ A classmate bullies the Water Savers group.
- ☐ Noor, Ahmed and Farida talk to Mr. Youssef, the cleaner.
- ☐ The school starts water-saving challenges.

6 Complete the summary of the story with these words:

أكمل ملخص القصة بهذه الكلمات:

teamwork - precious - spread - document - wasted

In a school near Luxor, three friends-Noor, Ahmed, and Farida-notice water being **1 wasted** from leaky taps and broken pipes. Concerned about saving this **2** resource, they start a project called "Water Savers." They make posters with helpful messages about the problem, and learn from the school cleaner how small leaks waste a lot of water. Despite some bullying, they go on. Their efforts **3** , helping students and teachers to save water through daily actions and fun challenges. The story shows how **4** and small actions can make a big difference.

Review 2



on Units 4, 5

Objectives of Review 2

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 5.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥.

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 5.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٥.

- To evaluate progress in Units 4 -5.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥.

★ Units 4 - 5

Unit 4

Key vocabulary



granite

الجرانيت



colored stones

احجار الملونة



gold

الذهب



clay

الصلصال / طين



papyrus

ورق البردي



bricks

طوب



temple

معبد



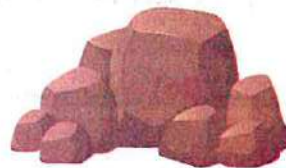
amulet

تميمة



iron

حديد



rock

صخر

material

مادة خام

oil

النفط / البترول

wrap

يُغلف

jewelry

المجوهرات

linen

كتان

natural resources

الموارد الطبيعية

stone

حجر

man-made

صناعي

solar power

الطاقة الشمسية

resources

موارد / مصادر

minerals

المعادن

recycle

يعيد تصنيع

solar panels

الواح الطاقة الشمسية

pollute

يلوث

gas

الغاز

huge

ضخم

Review 2

harm	يؤذي / يضر	flooding	الفيضان
climate	المناخ	crops	المحاصيل
protect	يحمي	irrigation	الري
waste	يهدر	electricity	الكهرباء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
survive يبقى	survived	write يكتب	wrote
decorate يزين	decorated	wear يرتدي	wore
wrap يغلف	wrapped	light يضيء	lit / lighted
carve ينحت	carved	sell يبيع	sold
turn off يطفى	turned off	bring يجلب	brought
contain يحتوي على	contained	build يبنى	built
develop ينمو / يتطور	developed	understand يفهم	understood
process يصنع	processed	keep على يحافظ	kept

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Modal Verbs: Must / Mustn't / Should / Shouldn't

1. Must + inf.: يجب ان

يستخدم الفعل الناقص (**must**) متبوعا بفعل في المصدر بدون (**to**) للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام لنقول أن شيء مهم أو قانون:

- You **must turn off** the lights to save energy.

2. Mustn't + inf.: يجب ألا

يستخدم الشكل المنفي للفعل (**mustn't**) متبوعا بفعل في المصدر بدون (**to**) للتعبير عن الحظر أو المنع.

- You **mustn't throw** rubbish on the ground.

3. Should + inf.: يجب ان - يُنصح بأن

يستخدم الفعل (**should**) متبوعا بفعل في المصدر بدون (**to**) للتعبير عن النصيحة أو لذكر فكرة جيدة:

- You **should walk** to school if it's close.

4. Shouldn't + inf.: يجب ألا / لا يُنصح بأن

يستخدم الشكل المنفي للفعل (**shouldn't**) متبوعا بفعل في المصدر بدون (**to**) للتعبير عن النصيحة بعدم فعل شيء أو لذكر أن الفكرة غير جيدة:

- You **shouldn't waste** water when washing your hands.

Unit 5

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



passport

جواز سفر



souvenir

هدية تذكارية



exhibition

معرض



information desk

مكتب استعلامات



luggage

حقائب / أمتعة



brochure

كتيب سياحي



travel plan

خطة سفر



guided tour

جولة مصحوبة بمُرشد

trip	رحلة	sustainable	مستدام / صديق للبيئة
suitcase	حقبة السفر	smart cities	مدن ذكية
unusual	غير عادي	cable car	تلفريك
entrance	مدخل	plateau	هضبة
location	موقع	luxury	فاخر
mummy	مومياء	water park	ملاهي مائية
spot	موقع - مكان	vision	رؤية
amazing shows	عروض مذهلة	main attractions	معالم سياحية رئيسية
peaceful	هاديء	Solar Park	محطة الطاقة الشمسية
overcrowded	شديد الازدحام	fuel	وقود
unite	يوحد / يربط	decision	قرار

Review 2

bundle	حزمة	valuable	قيم - ثمين
stick	عصى	Lotus Chalice	كأس اللوتس
wisdom	حكمة	wceremony	احتفال / مراسم
strength	قوة	afterlife	الآخرة
fighter	مصارع	development	تطوير
ideal	مثالي	tomb	مقبرة
solar energy	طاقة شمسية	funeral rituals	طقوس الجنازة

Conjugation of verbs

لتصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

pack	يعبئ
book	يحجز
board	يصعد علي متن
reduce	يقلل
move	ينتقل
devise	يصمم / يشيد
tie	يربط
destroy	يدمر
protect	يحمي
create	يخلق
benefit	ينفع
generate	يولد

Past ماض

packed
booked
boarded
reduced
moved
devised
tied
destroyed
protected
created
benefited
generated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

fly	يسافر جوا
take	يستغرق
sleep	ينام
build	يبنى
bring	يجلب
learn	يتعلم
keep	يحافظ على

Past ماض

flew
took
slept
built
brought
learned \
learnt
kept

Language notes

Past Simple

الماضي البسيط

Usage

استخدام

🔴 We use the past simple for:

🔴 نستخدم الماضي البسيط لـ

- She **baked** a delicious cake yesterday.

- ترتيب الأحداث في الماضي أو حكاية قصة في الماضي -

- We **entered** the museum, **took** photos, and bought souvenirs.

- They **played** outside after school every day.

Form

التكوين

🔴 يتكون الماضي البسيط من الفعل المنتظم بإضافة **d - ed - ied** فاعل (كل الضمائر) + التصريف الثاني للفعل من الفعل

غير المنتظم

Negative

النفي

تكملة الجملة + فعل مصدر **did not + inf.** + فاعل

- Noha **didn't clean** the house last night.

questions

السؤال

🔴 السؤال بهل (Yes / No question)

تكملة الجملة + فعل مصدر + فاعل **Did +**

- **Did she have** a car?

- **Yes, she did.**

- **Did they build** it in 2020?

- **No, they didn't.**

🔴 السؤال بكلمة استفهام: **Wh questions**

تكملة الجملة + فعل في مصدر **Wh word + did +** فاعل **inf.**

- Where **did he go** yesterday?

- What time **did you get up**?

Key words

الكلمات الدالة

in the past	في الماضي	ago	منذ	yesterday	بالأمس
last.....(year – month – week...)			السابق	in 2022	في ٢٠٢٢

Test on Units 4,5&6

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Minerals are very for Egypt.

- ☐ a small ☐ b dirty ☐ c important ☐ d expensive

2. We can find oil in the Western Desert and

- ☐ a Cairo ☐ b Luxor ☐ c Sinai ☐ d Aswan

3. Oil is a black found under the ground.

- ☐ a gas ☐ b stone ☐ c water ☐ d liquid

4. People use natural gas for cooking, heating, and making

- ☐ a paper ☐ b electricity ☐ c clothes ☐ d gold

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. means to make something look nice or beautiful.

- ☐ a Wrap ☐ b Survive ☐ c Decorate ☐ d Visit

2. I bought a small pyramid as a from the gift shop.

- ☐ a painting ☐ b color ☐ c souvenir ☐ d sport

3. I a nice room at the hotel.

- ☐ a flew ☐ b bought ☐ c booked ☐ d destroyed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sustainable - overcrowded - moving - center

Al Galala is a new city near the Red Sea. It helps people move away from big and ① cities. There are comfortable hotels and clean beaches for visitors. The city is also a ② for education and learning. Many families are ③ to Al Galala to enjoy a better life.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجاب عن الأسئلة:

Energy is something we all need every day to light our homes, cook, watch TV, and charge our phones. In Egypt, we use electricity, gas, and solar power. But energy is not endless, so we must use it wisely. Some energy comes from nature, like solar and wind, which are clean and don't pollute. Egypt has lots of sunshine, so using more solar panels saves money and helps the planet.

Other energy types, like oil and gas, can harm the Earth. We should save energy by turning off lights and devices when not in use, closing the fridge door quickly, and using the right size pot for cooking. Cars and buses use fuel which pollutes the air. Walking or biking short distances also saves energy and keeps us healthy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Solar and wind energy are and do not pollute the Earth.
 a dirty b clean c heavy d expensive
- We can save energy by turning off when we are not using them.
 a windows b clothes c lights d beds

B. Answer the following questions:

- What are two ways people in Egypt can save energy at home?

- How does walking or biking help the environment?

- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- my - we - played - and - I - games - visited - friend.

- do - find - in - Where - Egypt - oil - we?

Review 2

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You (**must**) throw the rubbish on the ground.
2. They (**have**) dinner an hour ago.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. did you play football

2. he went to alexandria last week.

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

The High Dam

huge wall - flooding and keeps water

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع
الواردة في وحدات كتاب

Bit by Bit

Unit

1

Lesson (1)

Khan El Khalili is a busy market in Cairo. You can buy many things here. There are colorful bags, bracelets, and necklaces. The smell of food and spices fills the air. People make furniture and sell wooden tools. You can hear musicians play music. The market is near ancient sites. It is fun to walk around and see the culture.

Test (1) - Unit 1

Riham spent her holiday in Egypt. She went to Aswan. The people were friendly and the food was delicious. She visited the High Dam which Aswan is famous for. Riham bought a postcard for her sister, Rawan.

Unit

2

Lesson (1)

Laila visited her grandfather's garden. He showed her the garden. She learnt from him that plants need water, sunlight and care to grow. Laila's father drinks mint tea every evening. Grandpa grows hibiscus to make a tasty drink.

Lesson (2)

The weather is changing from one city to another. In Alexandria, the wind is blowing, and light rain is falling. The waves are crashing on the beach, and the sky is full of clouds. In Cairo, the sun is shining and the weather is warm. People are walking in the streets. Children are playing in the parks.

Lesson (3)

The Nile is a very long river in Egypt. It flows through the desert and gives water to people and animals. Many animals live near the Nile, like crocodiles and birds. The river helps farmers grow food. People also use boats to travel on the Nile. A long time ago, Ancient Egyptians built temples near the river. Today, the Nile is still very important for life in Egypt.

Lessons (4-5)

At lunch, the wind blew hard and carried away our things. Sand got into my sandwich, and we had to move behind some rocks. Before we left, I picked up a small rock and kept it in my notebook.

Test (2) - Unit 2

In Aswan, It's much hotter. The sky is clear, and the sun is strong. Farmers are watering their plants early in the morning because the soil is becoming dry. People are drinking much water.

Unit

3

Lesson (1)

I'm Ahmed. I want to be a mechanic because I like this job. I help my father in his shop. My father is a mechanic, too. He fixes cars. My mother is a tailor. She makes dresses for women. She is a good tailor. She fixes old clothed for people.

Lesson (2)

Mariam sees a lot of garbage near the park. They decide to clean the park this weekend. Nour will ask the teacher to let them make posters." They also talk about another problem - the traffic near their school. It's noisy and dangerous. Nour thinks the principal can speak with the traffic officer. They want to make signs that say: "Drive Slowly!" and give them to parents and drivers.

Lesson (3)

Yesterday, Sarah and her family went to the park. The sun was shining, and the weather was warm. Sarah rode her bike while her little brother played with a ball.

They had a picnic under a big tree. They ate sandwiches and apples. After lunch, they saw ducks in the pond. Sarah felt happy and tired when they went home.

Lesson (4)

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a smart scientist from Egypt. He was born in 1933. He loved learning when he was young. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo. Then he went to the United States to do more science work. He became an expert in nanoscience. This is the science of very, very small things. Dr. El-Sayed used tiny gold particles to help doctors find and treat cancer. He won many awards. One big award is the U.S. National Medal of Science. He is a great scientist, and Egypt is proud of him!

Test (3) - Unit 3

Omar and his friends are talking about jobs. Omar wants to be a water resources engineer. He helps people get clean water. Youssef wants to be a mechanic because he likes fixing cars. Salma wants to be a paramedic. She helps people in emergencies. They also talk about other jobs like tailors, street cleaners, and delivery people. A tailor makes and fixes clothes. All these jobs are important and help the community.

Review 1**Test (1 - 2 - 3)**

Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in the south of Sinai, Egypt. It is known for its beautiful coral reefs, colorful fish, and clear blue sea. People from all over the world visit Ras Mohamed to swim, snorkel, and dive.

The nature in Ras Mohamed National Park is amazing. The park is home to many kinds of animals and plants. You can see sea turtles, dolphins, and many types of birds. There are also mountains and mangrove trees near the beach.

Unit 4**Lesson (1)**

The ancient Egyptians used many materials that we still use today. They built their houses with mud bricks and stones, which is still popular in construction. For writing, they used papyrus, similar to our paper today. Gold was used for beautiful jewelry, and we still love gold for its shine. They also used linen from flax plants for clothing, which is still a common fabric now.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Man-made resources are things people create. They are not from nature. People

use tools and machines to make them. Examples include toys, cars, and buildings. We use these every day. They help us live, work, and play. Unlike natural resources like wood or water, man-made things are built. They can be plastic, metal, or paper. People design and make them to solve problems. The sun, the moon and water are examples of resources that aren't man-made.

Test (4) - Unit 4

Saving water is very important. We need water for drinking, cooking, and cleaning. To save water, we should turn off the tap while brushing our teeth. We can also fix taps and use less water when washing. If we all save water, there will be enough for everyone. Clean water helps people, animals, and plants live.

Unit 5**Lesson 1**

Last summer, I went to the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM). I went with my father in his car. It is one of the most exciting places to visit. Work on the museum took almost 20 years to finish. It stands near the Pyramids in Giza. Visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in one trip.

Lesson 2

Last year, I went to Al Galala City. It is a modern city in Egypt. It was built on the Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna. It was part of a national plan devised in 2015 to reduce crowding in older cities.

Lesson 3

Yesterday, I visited my friend and we played games. We watched a funny movie and laughed a lot. After that, we cooked dinner and cleaned the kitchen. We wanted to make a cake but we were too tired.

Test 5

I'm Mahmoud. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo. I always work hard at school. My favorite subjects are science and computer studies. I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practice my English.

Review

2

Test (4 - 5)

Egypt has many valuable things under the ground. These are called minerals. They are very important for our country. Egypt has a lot of oil, rocks, and metals.

We find oil deep under the ground, especially in the Western Desert and Sinai. Oil is a black liquid. Egypt sells oil to other countries, and this brings money to Egypt.

Egypt also has a lot of natural gas. People use it for cooking, heating, and making electricity for lights and TVs.

ENGLISH

ملحق تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

20
26

الصف السادس الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

6th
**PRIMARY
FIRST TERM**



دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Lesson 1



Vocabulary

القاهرة القديمة	فن
يعزف موسيقى	عظيم
يصنع أثاث	أسورة
يمشي إلى متحف صغير	حقائب
ثقافة	مصباح
يشترى هدايا تذكارية	تصميمات
بزور الأماكن القديمة	طبلة
خان الخليلي	أصوات
قلادة	قديم
تنورة (حبيبة)	مزدحم
متحف	مدهش
سوق	خبز
عملة معدنية	رائحة
تاريخ	ملون
مثير	أدوات
خشبي	ممتع/متعة
بوابة	منطقة
ملابس	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يزور		يقف	
يعزف		يشترى	
يمشي		يأتي	
يشاهد		ياخذ	
يخبز		يصنع	
يتنسم		يختار	
يستمتع بـ		يقضي	

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

جمال	شاطئ
منطقة محمية	أرض
نظيف	البدو
الحياة البحرية	بالجوار
شجر المانجروف	هادئ
مشهور	زائر
حديقة وطنية	جبل
الجنوب	سلاحف بحرية
الشمال	دولفين
واضح	منظر طبيعي
طبيعة	يغطس بأنبوب تنفس
نوع	الشعاب المرجانية

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحمي		يحفظ	
يتبع		يرى	
يستمتع بـ		يسبح	
يحتوي على		يهتم	
يغطس			

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The _____ of the desert is beautiful, with mountains and sand.

- a** beach **b** landscape **c** reef **d** snorkel

2. The water is so _____ that you can see the fish from the boat.

- a** busy **b** amazing **c** clear **d** peaceful

3. The _____ live in the desert and are very kind people.

- a** dolphins **b** Bedouins **c** sea turtles **d** visitors

4. The water here is full of _____ like fish and dolphins.

- a** protected area **b** mangrove trees **c** marine life **d** landscape

5. It's important to _____ the park clean and safe.

- a** take **b** know **c** keep **d** learn

6. The _____ of baking bread is amazing.

- a** color **b** smell **c** old **d** ancient

7. There are workers _____ furniture by hand.

- a** play **b** walk **c** make **d** visit

8. Sherif stood to _____ a photo with his camera.

- a** buy **b** take **c** make **d** walk

9. We saw many buildings with Arabic _____ in Khan El Khalili.

- a** designs **b** activities **c** gates **d** sites

10. People from all over the world visit Ras Mohamed to swim, _____, and dive.

- a** follow **b** snorkel **c** protect **d** make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

snorkel - protected - coral - dolphins

Sinai is a land with both mountains and sea. The ① area of Ras Mohammed has a unique landscape. The famous ② reefs are amazing for any visitor. You can dive or ③ in the clear water. It is a clean and safe area for a quiet time

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ras Mohammed National Park is a famous protected area in the south of Sinai. The landscape here is amazing. You can see beautiful coral reefs when you snorkel or dive in the clear water. This area is very clean and safe for all visitors. The marine life is rich, with many kinds of fish. There are mountains and mangrove trees near the beach. You can also see sea turtles and dolphins. It's a peaceful place to enjoy nature.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ras Mohammed National Park is in the of Sinai.
 a north b south c middle d east
- When you snorkel or dive in the water at Ras Mohammed you can see
 a mountains b mangrove trees c coral reefs d Bedouins

B. Answer the following questions:

- How is the the water at Ras Mohammed?

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

- Why is Ras Mohammed National Park a good place to visit?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. life - Red Sea - Is - marine - the - in - amazing?

2. mangrove - quiet - There - a - area - with- is - trees.

3. learning - Egypt's - We - culture - love - about.

4. coral reefs - dolphins - near - Sea turtles - swim - the - and.

5. has - The - coins - from - museum - old - the past.

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. We usually (**does**) our homework after school.

2. My sister often (**play**) music in the evening.

3. The small museum (**have**) old coins.

4. They (**buys**) food from the market every day.

5. Nabil (**be**) always interested in learning Egypt's history.

6. (**Are**) you enjoy visiting ancient sites?

7. He (**don't**) go to his work by bus.

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

يحصد / حصاد / محصول	سجاد
تسجيلات صوتية	جاف
يومي	سجادة / مشاية
القوارب	حرف يدوية
النسيم	مصنع
بحيرة	شباك الصيد
خشبي	النول (أداة للنسيج)
هادئ	واحة
أداة / عدة	يصلح
صياد	يغزل
محصول	شخص قروي
شيق	مسؤوليات
وظيفة	يصبغ
دب	صوت إنسان
ميدان	يصطحب
خائف	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحصد		يعرف	
ينظف		يصطاد	
ينهي		يجلس	
يجفف		يزرع	
يسترخي		يبيع	
يبدأ		ينسج	
يصف		يطعم	
يصطحب		يدعم / يساعد	



Vocabulary

..... يلعب بالفناء	 دراسات اجتماعية
..... يأخذ استراحة قصيرة	 دين
..... النشيد الوطني	 تربية بدنية
..... روتين	 فول
..... يوم نموذجي	 خضراوات
..... ابذل ما في وسعي	 أسمنت
..... عادي	 ملابس
..... مادة دراسية	 محافظة
..... مجموعة	 فسحة
..... قليلا	 يخرج الكتب من الحقيبة
..... موضوع	 يحي العلم
..... اللغة العربية	 يعبئ الحقيبة المدرسية
..... علوم	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يستخدم		 يستيقظ	
..... يردش		 يغادر	
..... يضحك		 يتعلم	
..... يرتاح		 يزرع	
..... يجهز		 يغني	

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. How does the student go to school?

- a** By car **b** By bus **c** By bicycle **d** On foot

2. What does the student do at break time?

- a** Sleeps in class **b** Eats a sandwich and plays football
c Does homework **d** Watches TV

3. Which subject is the student's favorite?

- a** Math **b** Arabic **c** Science **d** Art

4. What does the student do after school?

- a** Goes shopping **b** Plays video games
c Does homework and rests **d** Visits friends

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers use a to collect crops.

- a** fishing net **b** tool **c** loom **d** dye

2. People in the village their clothes with colorful colors.

- a** spin **b** repair **c** dye **d** dry

3. Women make on a wooden loom.

- a** carpets **b** recordings **c** breeze **d** oasis

4. Fishermen use to catch fish.

- a** tools **b** fishing nets **c** harvest **d** responsibilities

5. In the desert, a / an has water and trees.

- a** loom **b** oasis **c** tool **d** harvest

6. The blows gently in the evening.

- a** voice **b** breeze **c** wooden **d** dye

7. Men boats when they break.

- a** spin **b** repair **c** dry **d** dye

Dictation & Exercises

8. _____ work together to collect dates.

a Tools

b Villagers

c Carpets

d Recordings

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar talks about his school day in Egypt. He says:

"My day starts early. I wake up at 6:30 a.m., get dressed, and have a quick breakfast. I usually eat bread, cheese, and some fruit. School starts at 7:30. We begin the day by standing in line, saluting the flag, and singing the national anthem. Then we go to our classrooms and start our lessons. Our first subject is usually Arabic. After that, we have subjects like math, English, and science. Some topics are a bit tricky, but I try my best. Around 10:15, we have a short break. I eat a sandwich, play with my friends like Kareem and Sara, and we talk and laugh. Later, we have more lessons such as social studies, religion, or computer. I enjoy learning how to use the computer. However, my favorite subject is P.E. because I like playing sports."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar wakes up at _____ in the morning.

a 7:30

b 6:30

c 10:15

d 8:00

2. During the break, Omar eats a _____ and plays with his friends.

a fruit

b cheese

c sandwich

d salad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the first subject Omar studies at school?

4. What is Omar's favorite subject? Why does he like it?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. sell - market - to- We - go - the - to - food.

2. usually - subject - Our - is - first - Arabic.

3. cement - factories - They - clothes - in - make - and.

4. tired - after - I - day - a school - feel.

5. village - is - interesting - Which - the most?

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. My brother (**help**) our father in the vegetable garden every morning.

2. The farmer (**watering**) the plants before sunrise.

3. We (**harvests**) fresh dates from our palm trees in summer.

4. (**Does**) our goats eat grass and vegetables from your farm?

5. Old (**carry**) water to the fields in every day.

6. My mother (**sell**) our extra vegetables at the market.

7. (**Do**) Salem like diving and swimming in Ras Mohamed?

8. My favorite subject (**be**) usually English.

9. (**Are**) they read the newspaper every morning?

10. On Fridays, we (**going**) to the market.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. when does omar leave school

2. my school day starts early

Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



3. What animals can you see near the coral reefs in the Red Sea?

☐ a Lions and tigers

☐ b Sea turtles and dolphins

☐ c Penguins and polar bears

☐ d Elephants and giraffes

4. Why is the water in the Red Sea clean and safe?

☐ a Because it is a protected area

☐ b Because it is very deep

☐ c Because it is far from people

☐ d Because it is very cold

5. What do people like to do in the Red Sea?

☐ a Play and eat

☐ b Snorkel and dive

☐ c Climb mountains

☐ d Ride camels

6. What can you do on land near the Red Sea?

☐ a Relax on the beach

☐ b Play in the snow

☐ c Visit a desert

☐ d Go ice skating

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Children their parents to the market.

☐ a repair

☐ b accompany

☐ c spin

☐ d dry

2. We watched the swim in the clear blue sea.

☐ a sea turtles

☐ b mangroves

☐ c landscape

☐ d smell

3. Our family teaches us good like kindness and respect.

☐ a crafts

☐ b customs

☐ c values

☐ d mud bricks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

spins - weaves - jumps - dye

Hi! I'm Hassan from Bashandy, a village in the Dakhla Oasis in the Western Desert. People in my village make carpets, rugs, and crafts. My family ① wool and ② it on looms. I help my mother ③ the wool with natural colors. Some visitors come to buy rugs from the village shops.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

In the north of Sinai, the beaches are not always busy. The water is clear, and you can see many dolphins from the land. This is another kind of protected area. The marine life here is amazing, too. You can snorkel from the beach and see beautiful coral reefs. It is a peaceful place to visit, far from the city. Many tourists come here to enjoy the beauty of nature and learn about the culture.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where can you see dolphins from the land?

a In the south of Sinai

b In a busy area

c In the north of Sinai

d In the city

2. What is a good way to see coral reefs from the beach?

a Snorkel

b Walk

c Drive a car

d Go to the city

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Is the north of Sinai a busy or peaceful place?

4. Summarize the passage in one sentence.

5. Besides dolphins, what can you see when you snorkel in the water?

Dictation & Exercises

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. subjects - I - enjoy - at - learning - many - school.

2. sell - go - to - the - to - food - We - market.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. My sisters (lives) in Alexandria.

2. Osman (help) his father with his work .

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. they can do many activities

2. my family spins wool and weaves it on looms

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Helping with the family work

Guiding phrases

- I love helping my.....

- We grow.....

Unit 2 Our Nature

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

..... سماذ طبعى	 صءة
..... الءشائش الضارة	 ءشرات
..... الرىءان	 صءى
..... الكركءىه	 رائء / ءمىل
..... زىء نباتى	 لذىء / شهى
..... أءشاب	 مءهش
..... ىروى / ىسقى	 ءلو المءذاق
..... ىزرء	 رائء
..... ىزىل من الءذر / ىقتلء	 رائء ءذا / لا ىصدق
..... ىزرء / ىنمو	 أخضر اللون
..... ىءءرى الءقة للءاكء من شىء / ىفءص	 شءرة الءوافة
..... ىءنى بىهءم بـ	 شءرة الءىن
..... ظل	 شءرة الزىءون
..... ضوء الشمس	 النقى / الءواء الطلق
..... بقاءونس	 زنجىل
..... طعم / نكهة	 ضار

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... ىبءو		 ىضر / ىؤءى	.....
..... ىضىف		 ىءافظ	.....
..... ىسءرءى		 ىزرء	.....
..... مءاقه / ىكون له طعم		 ىمءلك	.....
..... ىفوء منه		 ىشرب	.....
.....		 ىعطى	.....
.....		 ىصنع	.....

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

الطقس	صافي
ظل	حرارة
موجة	مختلف
نظارة شمسية	مختلف
الرياح	مبتل/رطب
أمطار خفيفة	دافئ
السماء	في الداخل
سحابة	في الخارج
غبار	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يبقى		يرتدي	
ينتقل		يشرب	
ينغلق/يغلق		يرى	
يحمي		يطير	
يستريح		يجلس	
		يعتني بـ	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

rest - growing - care - weed

We have a big garden near our house. My grandpa was a farmer and my father liked helping him. My father is good at ① many plants. He can ② the garden. He can plant many trees to sit and ③ in the shade. The garden is full of plants and flowers.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- How do plants people and the environment?
 a pull b help c check d grow
- People used to make oil in ancient times.
 a fertilizers b weeds c herbs d olives
- Farmers grow fruits like
 a figs b cotton c rice d carrots
- It's hot today, so we rest in the of the trees.
 a branch b root c leaf d shade
- We should out the weeds in our gardens.
 a pull b check c water d care
- is a kind of herbs.
 a Milk b Mint c Oil d Juice
- Most people wear to protect themselves from the sun.
 a skirts b shorts c shirts d hats
- We use to make a tasty drink.
 a insects b hibiscus c fertilizers d weeds

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

In Egypt, the weather changes from one city to another. When we watch the weather news on TV, we find the degrees are different from Cairo, Alexandria and Aswan. In winter, the weather in Alexandria is rainy and in summer, it's fine so, many people come there to swim and have fun, but in Aswan, the weather in winter is sunny and warm. Many tourists like visiting Aswan in winter. So, everyone should learn about the weather in his/her city and listen to the weather news every day to take care of his /her home and the farmers also take care of their crops.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The changes from one city to another in Egypt.

- a** sky **b** weather **c** soil **d** wind

2. The degrees are Cairo to Alexandria.

- a** similar to **b** the same **c** different from **d** near from

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How's the weather like in Aswan in winter?

.....

4. Who likes visiting Aswan in winter?

.....

5. What should the farmers take care of?

.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. drink - mint - **We** - like - tea - to.

.....

2. pulls - **He** - the - from - out - weeds - the garden.

.....

3. the weather - How's - in - your - city?

4. check - insects - I - on - for - the - plants.

5. wet - in - The - are - streets - Alexandria.

6. kind - herbs - What - grow - grandpa - of - does?

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. Hisham is (**eat**) his lunch now.

2. She (**not play**) basketball at the moment.

3. My sister and I (**drawing**) a picture now.

4. Mona's (**visit**) her aunt next week.

5. What (**is**) they doing?

6. We are (**visited**) our grandma.

7. They aren't (**play**) tennis.

8. Where (**be**) you going next week?

9. (**Do**) you making your bed?

10. When is (**they**) going to his club?

11. Is Nabil (**watch**) a film now?

12. They (**don't**) playing in the garden.

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

حيوانات	تمساح
قارب	سمك البلطي
سمكة البياض أو الفرخ النيلي	طائر الرفراف
طيور	يفيض أو ينهمر \ فيضان
المصريون القدماء	النيل
طائر البلسون أو مالك الحزين	معبد
الاطول	يتدفق
خطير	الصحراء
تربة زراعية	قمح
خاص أو مميز	دولة
	خضروات

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتدفق		يزرع	
ينهمر/ يفيض		يسبح	
يسافر		يفكر	
يمد		يبنى	
يعتمد		يجد	
		يحضر/ يجلب	

Lesson 4



Vocabulary

..... معرض	 كُتبان رملية
..... حفرة	 نادر
..... مخبا/مدسوسا	 مرشد
..... شلال	 عمود فقري
	 تاريخ

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... ينظم		 يدس / يخبا	
..... يصل		 يغادر	
..... يشرح		 يركب	
..... يحمي		 يوضح	
..... يدرك			

Activities

Lessons 3&4



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

rode - called - history - tourists

We went to a school trip to the Pyramids. The trip was wonderful and full of
 1 We saw many 2 Then, we 3 camels. We had our
 lunch with our friends. It's was too hot, but we were very happy.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Wadi El-Hitan in Fayoum is also called the Valley of the

- a Crocodiles b Fossils c Whales d Tigers

2. The is a bird that lives near the Nile.

- a crocodile b tilapia c kingfisher d snake

3. The Nile and brought good soil in the past.

- a grew b flooded c found d depended

4. I found my bag under a bench in the park.

- a took b tucked c thought d told

5. Where did the students go on the school

- a notebook b trip c door d wall

6. live in the Nile and they are very dangerous.

- a Temples b Herons c crocodiles d Boats

7. The Nile through Egypt from south to north.

- a flies b flows c finds d fights

8. Mr Yasser is a kind and showed us the lakes in Fayoum.

- a guide b doctor c firefighter d nurse

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. organize - Did - a school - you - trip?

2. birds - can - Which - the Nile - near - you - see?

3. protects - Wadi - rare - El Rayan - animals.

4. Nile - brings - the country - life - to - The .

5. did - the trip - the students - What - see - on - animals ?

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. Is Dalia (cooks) her lunch?

2. What's Fatma (do) now?

3. Now I (read) a book about animals.

4. (Do) your wearing your jacket today?

5. They (not practice) for the competition now.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. yes, we were watching a football match

2. what did you do on a school trip

Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. What's Egypt famous for?

☐ a The Egyptian Museum

☐ b The Pyramids

☐ c The River Nile

☐ d The Cairo Tower

2. What did the ancient Egyptians build near the river?

☐ a their farms

☐ b their temples

☐ c their houses

☐ d their boats

3. Which birds come to the River Nile?

☐ a kingfishers and ducks

☐ b hens and swans

☐ c eagles and pelicans

☐ d parrots and herons

4. How can the River Nile help farmers?

☐ a traveling in boats

☐ b growing many crops

☐ c building temples

☐ d keeping animals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. To make the soil good, we use natural

☐ a weeds

☐ b grass

☐ c insects

☐ d fertilizers

2. We should our plants every day.

☐ a water

☐ b rest

☐ c pull

☐ d drink

3. I like to the weather before going outside.

☐ a walk

☐ b check

☐ c think

☐ d listen

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

weather - guide - left - waves

I went with my family to Luxor. It's a beautiful city. We ① home early and took a train. On the way, we saw green farms and big cities. When we arrived, a

kind ② showed us the temples at Luxor. I took many pictures with my camera. The ③ was warm and sunny.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, our teacher Mr Kamal organized a school trip to the Sahara Desert. At first, the students were afraid, but we decided to go there. At seven o'clock in the morning, we rode the school bus. We went there at nine o'clock. It was too hot. We saw many animals like camels, fennec foxes, snakes and lizards. Mr Kamal told us that the Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world which is almost the same size as China. It is home for wild animals and full of nature. We took photos of many wonderful animals. They were running quickly across the sand. We went back home in the evening. We were very tired, but it was an unforgettable trip.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The Sahara Desert is the same size as
 a India b Africa c China d Japan
- We took photos of animals which were across the sand.
 a sleeping b eating c walking d running

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Which animals did the students see in the Sahara Desert?

.....

4. What did Mr. Kamal tell the students about the Sahara Desert?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. grow - in - basil - We - balcony - our.

.....

Dictation & Exercises

2. was - The trip - full of - learning - fun - and.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Are they (travel) to Fayoum?
2. She (go) to Alexandria next weekend.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. We organized a trip last sunday
2. why is the Nile important for Egypt

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding questions:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your trip to Wadi El Rayan

Guiding questions

- How did you go there?
- What did you see there?

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

ممتع	شجاع
مختلف	مركبة
رائع	يتحكم في
مهم	حالة طوارئ
نظيف	مجتمع
يجري بحثاً	قائمة
	أرواح

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعمل		يفعل	
ينظف		يصنع/يجعل	
يساعد		يحصل على/يحصل	
يصلح		يحضر	
		يقول	

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

نفايات/قمامة	ذكي/منتبه
أكياس القمامة	طلاب
ملصقات	البيئة
زملاء الدراسة	يرمي القمامة
مدير المدرسة	مزعج/صاخب
لافتات	السائقون
الصحة	سلة المهملات

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يسأل / يطلب		يسمح / يدع	
ينضم		يلق	
يعبر		يكتب	
يحتاج		يتحدث	
		يفكر / يعتقد	

A

ctivities

Lessons 1&2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

community - vehicles - emergency - brave

Many people live and work together in a community. Scientists do research to find new information. Firefighters must be ¹ when they enter burning buildings. Police cars and ambulances are ² used to help people. A paramedic helps people in a medical ³

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The traffic officer helps people the road.

- a** make **b** cross **c** play **d** eat

2. People use to collect garbage easily.

- a** garbage bags **b** hats **c** shoes **d** books

3. We make to share information with others.

- a** posters **b** tables **c** clothes **d** pens

4. The is the head of the school.

- a** principal **b** student **c** doctor **d** driver

5. Drivers must follow the to keep roads safe.

- a** traffic **b** books **c** games **d** chairs

6. Eating healthy food is good for your

- a** health **b** shoes **c** pencils **d** bags

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Mariam, Hadi, and Nour are talking about problems in their community. They see garbage near the park and want to clean it up. Hadi will bring garbage bags, and Nour wants to make posters. Mariam suggests writing messages like "Please use the bin." Then, they talk about traffic near the school. It's noisy and dangerous. They plan to ask the principal to help and make signs like "Drive Slowly!" They also talk about walking or riding bikes to school. Everyone wants to help make their community better.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children saw a lot of near the park.

- a** garbage **b** water **c** signs **d** cars

2. The traffic near the school is

- a** fun **b** dangerous **c** quiet **d** slow

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Nour want to make?
4. Who do the children want to talk to about the traffic?
5. Summarize the passage in two sentences.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. old - **The** - fixed - tailor - skirt - my
2. jobs - communities - in - will - **What** - the future - need?
3. important - the job - a paramedic - **Why** - of - is?
4. garbage - is - for - the environment - **Throwing** - bad
5. people - in - **A paramedic** - emergencies - helps

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. She (**not can**) walk to school.
2. I am (**able**) run fast.
3. (**Can't**) they do the research? - Yes, they can.
4. He (**can to**) speak three languages.

Dictation & Exercises

5. We (be able) finish the project tomorrow.

6. They (able) come to the party.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- can you help me.....

2- you should help your community.....

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

مخلوق	أشواك الصبار الحادة
متألق/لامع	صبار
مساعد/مفيد	وردة
غير سار	صحراء
فصول	وردة
أصدقاء مقربون	بتلات (أو أوراق الزهرة)
أشرقت	نقرة طائر (أو نقر الطائر)
ضعيفة	عطشان
منتعشة	بلطف
محرجة	خشن

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتألق		ينمو	
تفوح رائحته / يشم		ينبعث/يخرج من	
يُعجب بـ		تشرق/تسطع	
يمر		يصبح	
يعامل		يفقد	
يشارك		يطير	
يحكم على		يتحدث	
		يعود	

Lesson 4



Vocabulary

بارع / لامع	مرض السرطان
رائع جداً / مذهل	جوائز
بطل	الولايات المتحدة
صغير جداً	علمي
إنجاز	فكرة
بحث مذهل	بما في ذلك / يتضمن
جسيمات	صحيح / حقيقي
خبير عالمي	حقائق
الكيمياء	بقايا الطعام
علم النانو	فخر / اعتزاز
اكتشافات	عالم
جزيئات نانوية من الذهب	الفقراء

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يُدرس		يُكشف .....	.....
يتبرع		يُدعم .....	.....
يُستقبل / يُتلقى		يُصبح .....	.....
يُخزن		يأتي .....	.....
يسبب		يُكتشف .....	.....
يواصل		يلقى بعبدا .....	.....

Activities Lessons 3&4



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

scientist - nanoscience - cancer - Egypt

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a famous scientist from Egypt. He became an expert in ① _____, which is the study of very tiny things. He discovered that gold particles can help doctors treat diseases. One of the diseases they can help treat is ② _____. His country, ③ _____, is very proud of him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The rose had beautiful red
 a cars b petals c chairs d books
- The cactus was covered in sharp
 a feathers b thorns c buttons d strings
- The rose felt very because everyone admired her.
 a sleepy b proud c bored d hungry
- The desert was very during the summer.
 a cold b wet c hot d snowy
- Nanoscience studies very things.
 a tiny b heavy c loud d bright
- Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant
 a singer b athlete c scientist d actor

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Once upon a time in a dry desert, a beautiful rose grew. Her red petals sparkled in the sun, and she smelled sweet. Every desert creature admired her, and she felt very proud. Beside her grew a rough cactus, covered in sharp thorns. The rose thought he was ugly and made fun of him.

As the summer became hotter, the rose began to be dry and **weak**. One day, she saw a bird drink water from the cactus. The cactus kindly shared his water with the rose, and she recovered. From that day, the rose learned not to judge others by their looks.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The rose had bright red
 a seeds b roots c petals d thorns
2. The underlined word 'weak' is the opposite of
 a sad b bad c strong d tall

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the passage in one sentence.

4. What did the rose see the bird doing?

5. What lesson did the rose learn at the end?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. brilliant - a - scientist - is Dr. El-Sayed

2. red - beautiful - The rose - petals - had

3. worked - with - gold - tiny - particles - He

4. has - This - sharp - plant - thorns.

5. water - rose - The cactus - gave - to - the

6. became - The rose - and - friends - the cactus

Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



7. We should try to problems together.

- a plan b think c solve d waste

8. The garbage from the leftover food causes

- a research b pollution c packages d irrigation

9. We should plan to save food.

- a experts b stories c jobs d meals

10. We should also store food

- a badly b properly c quickly d wisely

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The cactus has sharp to protect itself.

- a petals b thorns c books d flowers

2. The designed our new school building.

- a mechanic b architect c tailor d paramedic

3. The traffic officer helped the children the road safely .

- a cross b design c fix d hang

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

rose - water - bird - thorns

A beautiful red rose grew in the desert. She thought the cactus was ugly because of his sharp ① One day, the rose had no ② to drink. She saw a ③ drink water from the cactus and asked for help. The Cactus was very kind and shared his water with the rose.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist. He was born in Egypt in 1933 and studied at Ain Shams University. Later, he traveled to the United States to

continue his work. He became a top expert in chemistry and nanoscience.

Dr. El-Sayed discovered how gold nanoparticles could help doctors find and treat some types of cancer. His rule, "El-Sayed's Rule," is known in science. He won many awards, including the US National Medal of Science. Egypt is very proud of him!.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Dr. El-Sayed is an expert in
 a history b nanoscience c astronomy d biology
- Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed's work helps doctors treat.....
 a headaches b cancer c colds d fevers

B. Answer the following questions:

- What did Dr. El-Sayed win?
- What did Dr El-Sayed discover?
- Give a suitable title for the passage.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- red - The rose - in - desert - grew.
- parked - The - near - vehicle - was - the park.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- He (able to) cook food well.
- You (can to) help me with the project.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- What s the moral of the story
- the rose has red petals and smells sweet

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Jobs you think are important

Guiding phrases

- Street cleaner keeps the city clean
- Paramedic helps save lives

Unit 4 Resources Around Us

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

الجرانيت	تمثال
الأحجار الملونة	متحف
الذهب	واجب / تكليف
الصلصال	ذهبي
ورق البردي	الذهب
طوب	الخشب
معبد	منحوتات
تميمة	مجوهرات
مادة خام	غني بالألوان
يبقى / يظل	نبات الكتان
قديم	لفافة
يزين	اواني
يُغلف	طوب
حديث / معاصر	الحبوب / الغلال
كتان	مومياء
جر	ضخم
قماش	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يبقى		يكتب	
يزين		يقرا	
يغلف		يرى	
يغطي		يرتدي	
يتواجد		يعني / يقصد	
ينحت			
يدوم			

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

الطاقة الشمسية	توربينات الرياح
يلوث	الصوب الزراعية
الألواح الشمسية	قذر / متسخ
يؤذي/يضر	كوكب
تغيير المناخ	أجهزة
يحمي	مسافة
يهدر	غير آمن
الكهرباء	لا نهاية له
الطاقة	أشعة الشمس
بحكمة	الغاز
وقود	النفط

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يوفر		يؤثر على	
يحتاج		يضيء	
يشحن		يأتي	
يطفئ		يحافظ على	
يغلق		يدفع	

Activities

Lessons 1,2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ancient Egyptians carved huge statues from

a flax

b linen

c granite

d papyrus

Dictation & Exercises

2. To survive means to continue to for a long time.

- a** exist **b** expect **c** enter **d** look

3. We should turn lights when we don't need them.

- a** on **b** off **c** of **d** for

4. We must protect the Earth from

- a** devices **b** energy **c** electricity **d** pollution

5. The ancient Egyptians used to make pots.

- a** papyrus **b** clay **c** light **d** gas

6. How can you electricity at home?

- a** clean **b** pollute **c** save **d** wrap

7. To charge our phones, we need every day.

- a** energy **b** jewelry **c** granite **d** gold

8. When you wash your hands, don't water.

- a** harm **b** waste **c** charge **d** protect

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

decorate - clay - modern - natural

We had a history lesson about the materials in Ancient Egypt. They used stone, **1**, papyrus, linen, gold and wood. These materials are **2**, so they lasted thousands of years. For example, The Ancient Egyptians used stone for sculptures. Now, stone is also used in **3** buildings.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. use - wisely - **We** - energy - must.
2. climate - causes - **Wasting** - change - energy.
3. linen - **Ancient** - used - hot - Egyptians - weather - in.
4. us - **Walking** - healthy - keeps - biking - or.
5. really - culture - fascinating - **Ancient** - is - Egyptian.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. We (**must to**) save energy.
2. You shouldn't (**wasting**) water.

3. They should (walked) to school.
4. You (mustn't to) play football here.
5. We (should to) save electricity at home.
6. My sister should (doing) her homework early.
7. You (must) touch electrical wires.
8. We must (kept) the environment clean.
9. You shouldn't (leaves) the lights on all night.
10. We must (came) to school on time.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1- what types of energy do people use at home
- 2- we should turn off the lights at night

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

ذهب	سائل
حديد	التدفئة
صخر	لامع
المعادن	ملك
غاز طبيعي	ملكة
النفط / البترول	الحديد الصلب
المجوهرات	مباني
الموارد الطبيعية	انواع
قيّم / ثمين	ينمو / يتطور
معادن	مستقبل
عميق / في العمق	الحياة اليومية
سيناء	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحتوي على		يبيع	
يسخن		يجلب	
ينمو/ يتطور		يبني	
		ينمو	

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

صناعي	حائط
موارد / مصادر	مرآة
يعيد تصنيع	صلصال
ضخم	موقع الكتروني
الفيضان	الجفاف
المحاصيل	بحيرة
الري	منتظم
الكهرباء	رسميا
مفيد / نافع	عبر / خلال
نصائح	الحبوب
إعادة استخدام	مصنع
صحيح / دقيق	خطير
معلومات	آمن

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يطبع		يحل	
يشرح		يرسم	
يصنع/ ينشئ		يفهم	
يتعلم		يبحث عن	
يصنع		يتعلم	
يعبر		يحافظ على	

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I'm doing a project about man-_____ resources.
 a make b making c made d maker
- Glass is made from _____.
 a oil b sand c clay d plastic
- _____ is a black liquid that brings money to Egypt.
 a Iron b Gold c Oil d Rock
- _____ is made from trees and processed in factories.
 a Plastic b Leather c Paper d Glass
- _____ is used for making steel for buildings.
 a Natural gas b Gold c Oil d Iron
- Man-made resources are things people _____ using natural materials.
 a draw b create c start d dry
- _____ are valuable things found under the ground.
 a Minerals b Panels c Bricks d Lights
- The High Dam helps farmers to use water for _____.
 a electricity b irrigation c flooding d building

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

mineral - steel - shiny - jewelry

Gold is very important for our country. It's a beautiful, yellow, ① _____ metal. In the past, the Ancient Egyptians used gold to make a lot of ② _____ for kings and queens. There are many statues made of gold in temples, too. So, we should use this ③ _____ wisely because it's very expensive.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Egyptian people are good builders. Think about building the High Dam. It's a huge wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It took ten years to build. It was built to solve the problems that the river caused like flooding or drought. Nowadays, it provides Egypt with water and electricity. The High Dam also helps farmers in irrigation. Farmers can grow more crops with regular water.

Dictation & Exercises

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The High Dam is a huge that crosses the Nile River in Aswan.
a door **b** wall **c** building **d** lake
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
a Egypt **b** the River Nile **c** the High Dam **d** Aswan

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How can the High Dam help farmers?
.....

4. How many years did the High Dam take to build?
.....

5. What does the High Dam provide to Egypt?
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. project - did - you - What - on - work?
.....

2. has - gas - Egypt - a lot of - natural.
.....

3. protects - cities - from - The High - flooding - Dam.
.....

4. eat - too much - You - food - shouldn't - junk.
.....

5. Dam - in - Aswan - built - The High - was.
.....

6. natural - are - Why - important - resources?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We must (**being**) quiet in our classroom.
2. You (**must to**) wear a uniform at school.
3. Children should (**listening**) to their parents carefully.
4. We (**shouldn't to**) sleep late.
5. People should (**used**) solar panels to get energy.
6. We should (**walks**) to be healthy.

Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. What's Nabil's project about?

☐ a Saving electricity

☐ b Using magnets

☐ c Using man-made resources

☐ d Recycling old things

2. What does Nabil give in his research?

☐ a Pieces of information

☐ b Helpful tips

☐ c Interesting resources

☐ d Natural materials

3. What's Nabil drawing pictures of?

☐ a Wasting energy

☐ b Making energy

☐ c Solar energy

☐ d Using energy

4. What kind of energy does Nabil suggest?

☐ a Natural energy

☐ b Unnatural energy

☐ c Electrical energy

☐ d Chemical energy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Doing research helps me new ideas.

☐ a float

☐ b understand

☐ c eat

☐ d forget

2. The Ancient Egyptians used colored to make amazing jewelry.

☐ a temples

☐ b bricks

☐ c stones

☐ d papyrus

3. is used for cars and buildings.

☐ a Papyrus

☐ b Rock

☐ c Soil

☐ d Steel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

recycle - writing - sand - supplies

People use natural materials to make man-made resources. These man-made resources are important in our life. For example, we use plastic to make bottles, toys and school ¹ We use glass which is made from ² to make mirrors, cups and windows. Factories make paper from trees and also ³ paper to make books and newspapers.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt has many gifts from under the ground. We call these gifts as natural minerals. These minerals help the country to develop and become rich. The **valuable** minerals such as, gold, oil, iron and natural gas are very important in our life. For example, we use iron to make steel which is used in big buildings and cars. We use gold to make beautiful jewelry and the natural gas is used for cooking, heating and making electricity for lights and TVs. In Western Desert and Sinai, oil is found under the ground. It's sold to other countries to bring a lot of money to Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "**valuable**" means
☐ a healthy ☐ b useless ☐ c precious ☐ d cheap
- is sold to other countries to bring money.
☐ a Oil ☐ b Granite ☐ c Rock ☐ d Clay

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why are natural minerals important for Egypt ?

4. Which mineral is used for making electricity?

5. Where's oil found in Egypt ?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. must - the Earth - We - pollution - protect - from

2. does - the - How - Dam - High - people - help?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Students should (**studied**) for their exams.

2. You (**must**) make noise in the library.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. you mustn't throw rubbish in the street

2. where can you see papyrus and statues

8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your research project about the High Dam

Your name is Ashraf and your email address is ashraf.21@yahoo.com. Your friend is Tarek and his email address is tarek.33@gmail.com.

Guiding phrases

protects cities from flooding - sends electricity to homes

New Message			
To	.....	Cc	Bcc
From	.....		
Subject	.....		
..... 			

Unit 5 Made in Egypt

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

جواز سفر	قناع
هدية تذكارية	حقيبة السفر
معرض	موقع
مكتب استعلامات	المتحف المصري الكبير
حقائب لامتعة	مومياء
كتيب سياحي	غير عادي
خطة سفر	موقع - مكان
جولة مصحوبة بمرشد	مدخل
رحلة	عروض مذهلة

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يقع		يسافر جوا	
يعبىء		يشترى	
ينهي		يقع	
يدخل		يستغرق	
يحجز		يخبر	
يصعد علي متن		ينام	
يستكشف		يبنى	

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

خطوط النقل	حلم
رؤية	تلفريك
مستدام/ صديق للبيئة	بيئة
معالم سياحية رئيسية	هضبة
مدن ذكية	هاديء
شديد الازدحام	فاخر
مريح	حكومة
	ملاهي مائية

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يثبت		يقدم	
يقلل		يعلم	
يرحب		يدير	
ينتقل		يبني	
يخطط		يلتقط	
يصمم/ يشيد			

Activities

Lessons 1,2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can't travel by plane without a

a brochure

b plan

c passport

d souvenir

2. My parents their luggage to travel to Alexandria.

a book

b pack

c board

d enter

3. I bought a lot of when I travel to Luxor.

a pharaohs

b mummies

c souvenirs

d visitors

Dictation & Exercises

4. They went to the information to ask about the time of the plane.

a wall

b door

c gate

d desk

5. The guide showed the tourists mummies in the at the museum.

a exhibition

b shop

c beach

d mountain

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

smart - entrance - usual - mummies

I really want to visit the Grand Egyptian Museum. In the museum, the tourists can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real ¹ You can also see the Solar Boat that belonged to the King Khufu. It is amazing because the museum is near the Pyramids in Giza. At the ², there's an information desk to ask questions or get help. The museum uses modern technology like ³ screens and amazing shows.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. full of - Al Galala - is - a city - life.

2. visit - do - Egypt - Why - tourists ?

3. is - a modern - in - Al Galala - Egypt - city.

4. bought - from - souvenirs - the gift - We - shop.

5. a travel - gave - The guide - plan - us - the trip - for.

6. education - Al Galala - a center for - and - learning - is.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We (**have**) lunch two hours ago.

2. (**Does**) Mr Samy finish his report yesterday?

3. Did you (**visited**) the Grand Egyptian Museum?

4. In the past, Al Galala Plateau (**is**) empty.

5. _____ (Do) your parents at your school yesterday?
6. _____ (Was) you travel to Al Galala last summer?
7. Where did you _____ (went) yesterday?
8. I _____ (buy) many souvenirs at the gift shop last week.
9. Maha _____ (doesn't) enjoy her trip yesterday.
10. My mother _____ (not be) at the kitchen an hour ago.

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

معرفة	يوحد/يربط
بداية	قرار
وسط	حزمة
نهاية	عصى
مغزي	حكمة
شخصية	قوة
مكان وزمان القصة	مصارع
محاصيل	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يناقش / يجادل		يكسر - ينكسر	
يبدأ		يزرع	
ينادي		يصبح	
يربط		يشعر	
يعيش		يتشاجر	
يفشل		يفهم	



Vocabulary

مثالي	كأس اللوتس
طاقة شمسية	احتفال / مراسم
محطة الطاقة الشمسية	الأخرة
وقود	تطوير
تلوث	مقبرة
قيم - ثمين	طقوس الجنائز

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يدمر		ينفع	
يدعم - يساند		يولد	
يحمي		يحصل على	
يحسن - يطور		يجلب	
يزود - يمد		يتعلم	
يخلق		يحافظ على	
يدخر - يوفر		يجد	

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Clean energy our planet.

- a** protect **b** waste **c** destroy **d** pollute

2. The bundle of sticks was to break.

- a** bad **b** worried **c** sad **d** hard

3. The brothers should together to be strong.

- a** fight **b** argue **c** unite **d** break

4. means using your knowledge to make good decisions.

- a** Unite **b** Wisdom **c** Strength **d** Bundle

5. Benban Solar Park electricity for many places.

- a** grows **b** generates **c** reduces **d** believes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

special - forever - handles - symbol

I saw an amazing object in the Grand Egyptian Museum yesterday. This object is Lotus Chalice. It looks like a white lotus flower with two ¹ It was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb. It was used in ² ceremonies like funeral rituals. It's a ³ of eternal life and beauty.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday I went to the library to read books. I saw the story "the Bundle of Sticks". I understood the moral lesson that Unity gives strength. When I went home, I told my brothers about the story. I always fight with my brothers and never work together, but after reading this story, I should listen to my brothers and stop fighting. Without my brothers, I will be weak and alone. My father was pleased when he listened to the story, too. I drew a picture of a bundle of sticks and showed the picture to my teacher and friends at school and told them about the story. We decided not to fight or argue angrily with each other again.

Dictation & Exercises

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After reading the story, the writer stopped
a playing **b** fighting **c** reading **d** drawing
2. The underlined word "**pleased**" means
a worried **b** happy **c** strong **d** angry

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the best title to the text?
4. What did the writer decide when they drew the bundle?
5. Who did the writer show the picture to?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. proud - of - **I** - project - Benban - feel.
.....
2. does - **Why** - use - the old - the bundle - man?
.....
3. improves - communities - local - project - **This**.
.....
4. Park - is - a smart - **Benban** - Solar - project.
.....
5. alabaster - Chalice - made of - **Lotus** - is.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Yesterday I (**play**) games with my friends.
2. My father (**is**) tired last week.
3. Did she (**cleans**) her room yesterday?
4. We (**see**) a special exhibition an hour ago.
5. Last weekend my parents and I (**are**) at the museum.

Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. When did the friends go to the museum?
☐ a In July ☐ b In May ☐ c In August ☐ d In April
2. Which show did the friends watch at the museum?
☐ a About Ancient Egypt
☐ b About skeletons of dinosaurs
☐ c About smart cities
☐ d About solar energy
3. Why did they decide to go again?
☐ a Because the museum is near.
☐ b Because the museum is in a modern city.
☐ c Because the museum uses technology.
☐ d Because the museum is near the pyramids.
4. What did they learn at school?
☐ a They learnt about kinds of dinosaurs.
☐ b They learnt about kinds of screens.
☐ c They learnt about modern technology.
☐ d They learnt about kinds of photos.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The tourist a brochure to learn about Egypt.
☐ a argues ☐ b reads ☐ c packs ☐ d boards
2. The information desk is a place where visitors can ask for
☐ a shopping ☐ b help to travel ☐ c exhibition ☐ d painting
3. Is it easy to a bundle of sticks alone?
☐ a build ☐ b fight ☐ c break ☐ d bake

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

worried - tell - fighting - untied

Once, there was an old farmer who had three sons. They were always ¹ together. The old farmer was worried and he had an idea to give his sons a bundle of sticks to break, but they couldn't break the bundle. Then, he ² the bundle and gave them single sticks. The sons broke them easily. The father wanted to ³ them that they were like these sticks. Together they were strong, but alone they could be broken.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi! My name's Karim. My family lives in Aswan. My father is an engineer. He works in Benban Solar Park project. This project is one of the world's largest solar stations. It was built between 2018 and 2019. This station was built to get energy from solar panels that provide electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories. This smart project helps us save money by using sunlight and protects the environment from pollution. It also creates thousand of jobs for engineers, builders and people from other villages. My father took me to visit this project and I felt proud and I hope to work in this station in the future.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Karim's father is a/an in Benban Solar Park.

- a** builder **b** engineer **c** guide **d** villager

2. Benban solar panels provide to many places.

- a** irrigation **b** pollution **c** electricity **d** information

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in two sentences.
4. What does Karim hope to do in the future?
5. How does Benban project help the environment?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. City - has - hotels - luxury - Al Galala.

2. reduce - helps - Benban - pollution - project.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How long did the trip ----- **(took)** yesterday?

2. We ----- **(not understand)** the lesson yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what can visitors see inside the museum

2. egypt is one of the oldest countries in the world

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

The Grand Egyptian Museum

Guiding phrases

- the most exciting places to visit
- help people learn in a fun way

امتحانات عامة على منهج الفصل الدراسي الأول

Test 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. I wake up around a.m.

a 5

b 5:30

c 6

d 6:30

2. My drives me to school.

a dad

b brother

c mother

d uncle

3. Our first subject is usually

a science

b maths

c English

d Arabic

4. I have a quick breakfast usually bread, cheese, and

a fruit

b salad

c beans

d vegetables

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. When it's hot, people drink water and rest in the

a shade

b street

c heat

d dust

2. We wear hats to ourselves from the sun.

a heat

b clean

c grow

d protect

3. In Egypt, people use like basil in cooking.

a water

b herbs

c oil

d gas

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

soil - water - travel - temples

The Nile River is very important for people in Egypt. A long time ago, the Nile flooded every year. When it flooded, it left behind rich ❶ that helped farmers grow crops like wheat and vegetables. The river also gives ❷ to people and animals, which is very important in a hot country like Egypt. Today, people still use the Nile to ❸ by boat from one place to another.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Noura. I want to be a doctor so I always work hard at school. My favorite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very kind, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It is a fantastic place! I cycled to school every day, and I met students from different countries.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Noura's favorite subjects are science and.....
 a Arabic b English c maths d computer studies
- The underlined word "It" refers to.....
 a London b phone c English d family

B- Answer the following questions:

- What is the passage about?

- How is technology useful for Noura?

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

- buy - We - from - Khan El Khalili - souvenirs.

- help - How - do - and - people - plants - the environment?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- In the past, Ancient Egyptians (**build**) temples near the river
- She (**plays**) with her dog in the park at the moment.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- Don t touch it

- my favorite colors are blue green and yellow.

Tests

8 Write an email of FIFTY(50) words using the following guiding elements:

to your friend Ayman to tell him about the Grand Egyptian Museum. Your name is Ali and your email is ali22@gmail.com. Your friend's email is ayman45@yahoo.com

Guiding words

place - stands

New Message

To

:

Cc Bcc

From

:

Subject

:

Send

A | 📎 | 🖼️ | 🔗 | 😊

🗑️ | ▼

Test 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

تصغ الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- In the wind is blowing, and light rain is falling.
 a Alexandria b Cairo c Aswan d Luxor
- The waves are crashing on the
 a houses b beach c hotels d boats
- People are staying indoors because it's and windy.
 a cold b sunny c rainy d cold
- Shops are early because not many people are going outside.
 a closing b buying c painting d opening

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- We must the Earth from pollution.
 a forget b protect c use d leave
- Our school a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum.
 a played b ate c organized d painted
- Sea turtles in the warm Red Sea.
 a fly b write c swim d draw

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

breeze - fishermen - accompany - pollution

Hello! I'm Amina from Ezbet El Borg in Damietta. People here are ①
 I ② my father to catch fish early in the morning. Some villagers work in fish factories or repair boats. We eat fish almost every day and enjoy the cool sea ③

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Many tourists come to Egypt from all over the world. They can come by plane or ship. Egypt is a popular place for a holiday. In Egypt, tourists can visit many exciting places and do many interesting things. In Alexandria and Hurghada, they can enjoy the wonderful beaches and delicious food. In Cairo, they like to visit the Pyramids. There, they ride camels and enjoy taking photos. They go to Luxor and Aswan to

Tests

enjoy the High Dam and the **ancient** temples. They always say that Egypt is a safe country.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- In Egypt, tourists can visit many exciting
a countries **b** towers **c** Sphinx **d** places
- The underlined word "**ancient**" means very
a young **b** old **c** tired **d** modern

B- Answer the following questions:

- What can tourists ride at the Pyramids?
.....

- Where do tourists come from?
.....

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة ،

- the - children - **Did** - their - project - achieve ?
.....

- trees - **We** under - in - to - sit - the shade - rest.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- She (**wake**) up early in the morning every day.

- He (**able**) speak with the traffic officer.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- i can't believe it's already friday.
.....

2. Please close the door quietly

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

the Solar energy

Guiding words

important - sunlight

Test 3

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. In Cairo, the sun is shining and the weather is

- a** windy **b** sunny **c** hot **d** warm

2. Some families are sitting in

- a** gardens **b** beaches **c** parks **d** balconies

3. are moving gently in the wind.

- a** Windows **b** Trees **c** Paper **d** Clouds

4. Some students are doing their outside.

- a** swimming **b** playing **c** homework **d** exercise

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use to get energy from the sun.

- a** solar panels **b** fridges **c** greenhouses **d** wind turbines

2. is to give reasons for or against something.

- a** Play **b** Argue **c** Unite **d** End

3. When we all, things get better.

- a** play **b** help **c** dance **d** jump

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

spins - Oasis - natural - rugs

Hi! I'm Hassan from Bashandy, a village in the Dakhla ① in the Western Desert. People in my village make carpets, rugs, and crafts. My family ② wool and weaves it on looms. I help my mother dye the wool with natural colors. Some visitors come to buy ③ from the village shops.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

School starts at half past seven every day. Nabil lives **near** his school, so he goes to school on foot. He is kind and friendly. He works hard to pass his exams every year. He likes reading, so he goes to the school library twice a week. He hopes to be

a doctor because he is good at maths, science and English. He likes meeting clever people, but he doesn't like meeting bad people.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about
 a mobiles b computers c Nabil d doors
- The opposite of the word "near" is
 a close b next c far d tired

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How often does Nabil go to the school library?

4. Why does Nabil go to school on foot?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. engineers - do - water - resources - What - do?

2. grow - does - What - herbs - Grandpa - kinds of?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Where (are) you spend your weekend every week?

2. My sisters (not able) ride a bike.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. is that your car parking outside

2. are you sure what to do next

Tests

- 8** Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقبرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A short story you like

Guiding words

an old man - a bundle of sticks

Handwriting practice area with 20 sets of dashed lines for writing.

Test 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- In Aswan, it's much hotter. The is rising quickly.
 a sun b buildings c temperature d homework
- The sun in Aswan is very
 a strong b high c old d weak
- Farmers are watering their plants in the
 a morning b afternoon c night d evening
- Most people are wearing hats and
 a glasses b watches c caps d sunglasses

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- A / An is a sudden situation that needs quick help.
 a vehicle b emergency c community d mechanic
- To is to cover something by putting material or cloth around it.
 a survive b wrap c decorate d see
- The cactus grows in the
 a desert b sky c tree d water

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

emergencies - vehicles - Paramedics - resources

I'm doing research about jobs that help our community. Mechanics fix ① and I like fixing things. Water ② engineers make sure we get clean water in our homes and schools. ③ and doctors help people in emergencies. They are all very important jobs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last Friday, Mazin went to the zoo. He went with his family. His father drove them there. It was sunny when he went to see the monkeys. They were all very tired. He thought they were sleeping. Then, he went with his family into a cave to see the bats, but the cave was dark and he couldn't see anything. After that, he bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was bath time for them. Mazin enjoyed that

Tests

but then something bad happened. An elephant ate his ice cream. At the end of the day, he returned home feeling sad.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mazen went with his family. They went there.....
a by metro **b** by car **c** on foot **d** by bus
2. The underlined word "**there**" refers to the.....
a street **b** car **c** zoo **d** house

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When did Mazin go to the zoo?
.....
4. Do you think Mazin enjoyed his day? Why / Why not?
.....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. always - **The weather** - is - in - changing - Egypt.
.....
2. used - and - small - **They** - colorful - stones - gold.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

1. Does she (**playing**) the piano every day?
2. She (**not can**) walk to school.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. did you hear that strange noise
.....
2. the concert was amazing
.....

8 Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Materials in ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases

papyrus scroll - use stone

Handwriting practice lines for the text.

Test 5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Maged goes to with his family.
 a the zoo b the museum c Khan El Khalili d the park
- Maged's sister buys a
 a lamp b bracelet c colorful necklace d bag
- The smell of the bread in the street is
 a bad b amazing c boring d strong
- Maged stands near a for a photo.
 a wooden gate b big statue c glass window d small shop

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- My grandparents used to animals like chickens and goats.
 a talk b make c fight d raise
- He thanked the for saving his life.
 a discoveries b paramedic c vehicle d architect
- A is the lesson or message we learn from a story .
 a moral b thorn c petal d vehicle

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sculptures - Stone - gold - materials

I'm reading about ① the ancient Egyptians used. It's so cool. They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold! Some materials are still used today. ② is used in modern buildings just like they used it for pyramids and temples. I love how they carved huge statues from granite. We still use stone today for ③ and buildings.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is a great country in the north of Africa. Cairo, which is a very big city, is the capital. People in Egypt speak Arabic. Egypt is famous for the Pyramids of Giza, the fine weather and the Nile. The Nile is the longest river in the world. Tourists visit Egypt to enjoy the beauty of nature. We love our country very much. We work hard

to help Egypt develop. Everyone does their best to make Egypt one of the **best** countries in the world.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about
 a Africa b Cairo c Egypt d Nile
- The underlined word "**best**" means
 a leading b youngest c smallest d largest

B- Answer the following questions:

- Why should we work hard?

- Why do tourists visit Egypt?

- Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

- is - The Nile - in - the world - river - the longest

- are - on - The waves - crashing - the beach.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

- Children (**help often**) their parents after school.
- (**Does**) you hang posters around the park? - Yes, I can.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

- They went to alexandria on monday.

- must you wear a uniform

Tests

8 Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A typical day at your school

Guiding words

national anthem - lessons

This image shows a full page of handwriting practice paper. It features multiple rows of horizontal dashed lines spaced evenly across the page, designed to help learners practice letter formation and alignment. The background is white, and the lines are black. There is no text or other markings on the page.

Test 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Omar is doing a project about

- a** animals **b** man-made resources
c history **d** natural disasters

2. Omar searched the internet with his

- a** teacher **b** sister **c** dad **d** friend

3. He wrote facts in his

- a** textbook **b** notebook **c** storybook **d** phone

4. Plastic is made from

- a** paper **b** wood **c** oil **d** water

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Respect and kindness are important in every home in Egypt.

- a** news **b** guides **c** information **d** values

2. The thorns are very I can't touch them.

- a** soft **b** nice **c** sharp **d** great

3. Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian

- a** farmer **b** mechanic **c** scientist **d** tailor

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

coral - fish - swim - mountain

Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in the south of Sinai, Egypt. It is known for its beautiful ① reefs, colorful ②, and clear blue sea. People from all over the world visit Ras Mohamed to ③, snorkel, and dive. The nature in Ras Mohamed National Park is amazing.

Tests

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hello! I'm Mohamed. I will tell you about my daily routine. I get up at seven o'clock every morning. I wash my face and I get dressed. Then, I have my breakfast. After breakfast, I brush my teeth. Then, I get ready for school. I pack my bag and take my lunch with me. I go to school by bus. I have some lessons in the morning. I have lunch at twelve o'clock. Then, I have more lessons. I go home at half past three. At home, I do my homework. Then, I have dinner with my family. After that, I have a shower and brush my teeth. I go to bed at 9 o'clock. I need to sleep early to get up early the next day.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about Mohamed's
☐ a school ☐ b daily routine ☐ c family ☐ d favorite subjects
- Mohamed has lunch
☐ a at the park ☐ b at school ☐ c in the kitchen ☐ d in his bed

B- Answer the following questions:

- Why does Mohamed sleep early?
.....
- How does Mohamed go to school?
.....
- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- is - place - Ras Mohamed - for anyone - a great.
.....
- and - are - wearing - people - hats - Most - sunglasses.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The train (leave) at 3.15 p.m.
- You (mustn't) turn off the lights to save energy.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I watched a boring movie on tv.

2. can the teachers help the students

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Minerals in ancient Egypt**Guiding phrases**

making jewelry - making steel for buildings

Test 7

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Last _____, our school organized a trip.

- a** Sunday **b** Thursday **c** Tuesday **d** Monday

2. Wadi El Rayan National Park is in _____.

- a** Fayoum **b** Giza **c** Cairo **d** Aswan

3. I sat on the bus with my best friend _____.

- a** Ashraquat **b** Noura **c** Nada **d** Mariam

4. We left school early and rode the bus for _____ hours.

- a** six **b** three **c** two **d** five

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Yesterday, I saw a paramedic helping people in a \ an _____.

- a** emergency **b** station **c** museum **d** library

2. _____ is made from sand and used in windows.

- a** Culture **b** Glass **c** Wood **d** Water

3. We use _____ to get energy from the sun.

- a** wind turbines **b** greenhouses **c** fridges **d** solar panels

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

notebook - plastic - Glass - animal

I'm doing a research project about man-made resources for my English class. I started by reading a book and searching the internet with my dad. I wrote facts in my **1** _____ and printed pictures to help explain. Man-made resources are things people create using natural materials. For example, **2** _____ is made from oil and used for bottles, toys, and school supplies. **3** _____ is made from sand and used in windows, mirrors, and cups.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My grandpa's garden looks incredible. He keeps it so green and healthy. He takes care of it every day as plants need water, sunlight, and care to grow well. He grows herbs like basil, mint, and parsley. We use them in many Egyptian meals. Some add flavor, and others are good for health. My grandpa drinks mint tea every evening on the balcony. It helps him relax. It tastes good. He also grows hibiscus and jasmine. They smell lovely and we use hibiscus to make a tasty drink.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about

- a** plants and trees **b** grandpa's garden **c** Egyptian meals **d** drinks

2. The underlined word "It" refers to

- a** basil **b** flavor **c** jasmine **d** mint tea

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why does my grandpa take care of the garden?

4. Why do we use hibiscus?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. use - the - for - irrigation - **Farmers** - water.

2. every - do - do - **What** - people - there - day?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We (**mustn't**) be quiet in the library.

2. (**Do**) you travel last summer?

Tests

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. help me Nada.

2. He visited his uncle last friday

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

The weather in your city

Guiding words

the wind - the waves

Test 8

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



3. Egypt is a country, so it is good for solar energy.

- a** rainy **b** snowy **c** cold **d** sunny

4. Benban Solar Park is located near

- a** Cairo **b** Aswan **c** Giza **d** Luxor

5. The solar park was built between

- a** 2010 and 2011 **b** 2015 and 2016
c 2018 and 2019 **d** 2020 and 2021

6. The electricity from Benban Solar Park goes to homes, schools, hospitals, and

- a** farms **b** hotels **c** shops **d** factories

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A \ An is a tool made of rope or string used to catch fish
☐ a company ☐ b loom ☐ c fishing net ☐ d glasses
2. Some people like to check the before they go outside to know if it's hot or cold.
☐ a shop ☐ b beach ☐ c plant ☐ d weather
3. Don't water when you brush your teeth.
☐ a use ☐ b harm ☐ c waste ☐ d close

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

saluting - poem - drives - anthem

My day starts early. I wake up around 6:30 a.m., get dressed, and have a quick breakfast. At 7:00, I leave the house. My dad ① me to school. School begins at 7:30. We start the day outside by standing in line, ② the flag, and singing the national ③ Then, we go to our classrooms and begin our lessons.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm reading about materials the ancient Egyptians used. It's so cool. They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold! It's unbelievable how long that material could survive. Some materials are still used today. Stone is used in modern buildings. They used it for pyramids and temples. I love how they carved huge statues from granite. We still use stone today for sculptures and buildings. Linen is made from flax. Ancient Egyptians wore it every day and even wrapped mummies in it. Clay is another interesting material. They made pots, jars, bricks and small statues and amulets too!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians used for pyramids and temples.
☐ a linen ☐ b gold ☐ c stone ☐ d clay
2. The underlined word "it" refers to
☐ a linen ☐ b papyrus ☐ c wood ☐ d gold

Tests

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is linen made from?

4. Why is clay important?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. scared - me - I - last - night - had - that - a nightmare.

2. Alexandria - What - like - in - is - the weather?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

1. Do you go to the club? - Yes, I (am).

2. You should (walking) to school if it's close.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

1. The high dam is in Aswan.

2. Do they speak arabic

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن :

Animal habitats

Guiding words

environments - deserts

Test 9

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- Once upon a time in a dry desert, a beautiful _____ grew.
 a rabbit b camel c tree d rose
- The red petals _____ in the sun.
 a sparkled b shown c ran d slept
- Beside the rose grew a rough _____
 a cactus b flower c tree d palm tree
- The rose thought the rough cactus was _____
 a ugly b nice c high d good

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We should walk or _____ bikes.
 a ride b fly c drive d hang
- _____ means to color cloth or wool using a special liquid.
 a Respect b Wash c Dry d Dye
- Solar energy comes from the _____.
 a wind b water c sun d steel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rest - religion - begin - tired

We have more lessons like social studies, ① _____, or computer. I enjoy learning how to use the computer in class. However, my favorite subject is P.E. The school day ends at 1:30 p.m. I usually feel a bit ② _____, but I'm happy after a good day. I go home, eat lunch, ③ _____ a little, and then do my homework.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is one of the most exciting places to visit in Egypt. Its construction has been a monumental undertaking, taking nearly 20 years to finish. It located near the Pyramids in Giza, the museum provides **amazing** views

Tests

of these great wonders. Inside, visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, and many other ancient objects. There are also some artifacts. For any questions or guidance, a well-staffed information desk is available..

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Grand Egyptian Museum takes 20 to finish.
a weeks **b** months **c** centuries **d** years
2. The underlined word "**amazing**" means.....
a high **b** interested **c** tired **d** beautiful

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What can you see in the Grand Egyptian Museum?
.....
4. Where is The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)?
.....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة.

1. is - important - Egypt - the Nile - **Why** - for ?
.....
2. able to - **They** - sing - are - beautifully.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Ahmed is playing football (**ago**).
2. You (**should**) waste water when washing your hands.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. can you ride a bike
.....
2. samah doesn t like milk.
.....

- 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقالة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Ras Mohmed National Park

Guiding phrases

the south of Sinai - many kinds of animals

Test 10

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The High Dam is in

a Aswan

b Isna

c Luxor

d Cairo

2. The High Dam holds a large lake called Lake

a Manzala

b Tamsah

c Qarun

d Nasser

3. They built the High Dam to solve problems with and drought.

a flooding

b painting

c building

d desert

4. It help farmers grow more crops with water.

a high

b bad

c some

d regular

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. She asked her brother to her to the store.

a accompany

b walk

c wake

d run

2. We sit under trees to rest in the

a leaves

b dust

c street

d shade

3. live in the Nile and they are very dangerous.

a Donkeys

b Crocodiles

c Books

d Birds

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

schools - farms - cement - prepare

It is the daily life in Beni Suef. People wake up early, they clean the house and ① breakfast. Many people work on ② They grow cotton, beans, and vegetables. Some work in factories. They make ③ and clothes. At noon, families eat lunch together. They eat rice, bread, and vegetables.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Energy is something we all need every day to light our homes, cook, watch TV, and charge our phones. In Egypt, we use electricity, gas, and solar power. But energy is not endless, so we must use it wisely. Some energy comes from nature, like solar and wind, which are clean and don't pollute. Egypt has lots of sunshine, so using more solar panels saves money and helps the planet. Other energy types, like oil and gas, can harm the Earth. We should save energy by turning off lights and devices when not in use, closing the fridge door quickly, and using the right size pot for cooking. Cars and buses use fuel which pollutes the air. Walking or biking short distances also saves energy and keeps us healthy.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We need energy every day to our homes and charge phones.

- a** cook **b** light **c** paint **d** clean

2. Solar and wind energy are clean and do not

- a** save money **b** pollute **c** shine **d** use fuel

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why must we use energy wisely?

4. Name two things we can do to save energy at home.

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. our lessons - **We** - our classrooms - and - begin - go to.

2. water - **Farmers** - early - in - plants - the morning.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We are (**visit**) Grandma this weekend.

2. You (**are**) cross the street when the light is red.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where did your aunt go last week

2. Fady s first subject is usually english.

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (50) كلمة عن:

The River Nile

Guiding words

the longest river - many animals

Test 11

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian.....

- a** scientist **b** vet **c** engineer **d** teacher

2. He was born in Egypt in.....

- a** 1922 **b** 1935 **c** 1933 **d** 1913

3. He studied at University.

- a** Alexandria **b** Aswan **c** Giza **d** Ain Shams

4. Dr. El-Sayed became a top expert in.....

- a** geography **b** science **c** history **d** computer

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Gases from cars and buses can the air.

- a** pollute **b** clean **c** charge **d** protect

2. We saw a mummy in the new at the museum.

- a** class **b** exhibition **c** playground **d** hospital

3. A brings food, or packages to places.

- a** street cleaner **b** delivery person **c** tailor **d** paramedic

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sustainable - moving - overcrowded - center

Al Galala is a new city near the Red Sea. It helps people move away from big and **1** cities. There are comfortable hotels and clean beaches for visitors. From the **2**, people can see a great view of the sea and mountains. The city is also a center for education and learning. Many families are **3** to Al Galala to enjoy a better life. It is part of Egypt's plan to build sustainable cities for the future.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The Aswan High Dam is a very big dam built across the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It was finished in 1970 and it is an amazing example of engineering. The High Dam stands as one of the most exciting places to visit here. Before the dam, the Nile River would flood every year, sometimes causing big problems for farmers and towns. The High Dam helps to control these floods, making life much safer. It also creates a **huge** lake behind it, called Lake Nasser, which stores water. This water is used to irrigate farms, helping Egypt grow more food. Another important thing the dam does is to make a lot of electricity, which powers homes and businesses all over the country.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a Cairo b Alexandria c The High Dam d food
- The underlined word "**huge**" means
 a important b smart c big d high

B- Answer the following questions:

- What is the lake called?

- Give two reasons make the High Dam important.

- When was the High Dam built?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- dinner - for - always - cooks - the whole - **Their grandmother** - family.

- read - morning - they - the - **Do** - every - newspaper?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I am (**able**) run fast.
- They (**play**) outside after school every day when they were young.

Tests

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I hope you re doing well
2. should people drink water and rest in the shade

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A trip to Wadi El Rayan national park

Guiding words

organized - sand dunes

Test 12

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. The story takes place in a
 a forest b mountain c desert d river
2. The rose had petals.
 a soft red b hard green c big blue d small white
3. The rose gave off a smell.
 a sweet and lovely b bad and strong c spicy and hot d cold and fresh
4. The rose believed she was the plant in the desert.
 a smallest b oldest c most special d tallest

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers in Salma's village the crops.
 a harvest b paint c teach d book
2. In the morning, students sing the national
 a song b poem c anthem d line

3. The traffic near the school is and dangerous.

a calm

b great

c noisy

d helpful

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ النص واكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

environment - decorate - posters - throw

Look at all the garbage near the park. It looks terrible. People **1** garbage everywhere. That's not okay. We need to do something. It's bad for the **2** We can clean it this weekend. I can bring some garbage bags. I can ask my teacher to let us make **3** to hang around the park. Our classmates will be able to help too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm doing research about jobs that help our community. I want to make a list of jobs and how they help the community. Mechanics fix vehicles, and I like fixing things. Water resources engineers make sure we get clean water in our homes and schools. Paramedics help people in emergencies. That's a brave job. They help save lives. Traffic officers help people cross the road and control cars. Street cleaners clean the streets and help keep the city beautiful. They are all very important jobs.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Traffic officers help people cross the road and control

a cars

b lights

c clouds

d students

2. The underlined word "they" refers to the

a researches

b jobs

c communities

d vehicles

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is the passage about?

4. Why is a paramedic a good job?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. born - was - Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed - Where ?

2. volleyball - with - My sister - her school - plays - team

Tests

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I (not wear) my jacket today. It's hot.

2. I (take) photos last week.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. he went to the store

2. how do you go to work

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

The High Dam

Guiding words

huge - flooding

.....

.....

.....

AL- Azhar general tests

AL- Azhar

Test 13

1 Read and complete the dialogue::

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

oldest - many - is - years - youngest

Amr : How old are you, Hani?

Hani : I'm 13 ① old.

Amr : Who is the oldest person in your family?

Hani : My uncle is the ②

Amr : Who is the ③ ?

Hani : My sister Elham is the youngest.

Amr : Who is the tallest?

Hani : My father ④ the tallest.

Amr : How ⑤ people are there in your family?

Hani : Seven people.

2 Read and circle the odd one out: اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1	how	engineer	where	what	-----
2	amazing	thirty	thirsty	happy	-----
3	twelve	community	sixty	seventy	-----
4	white	car	black	blue	-----
5	support	hose	survive	grow	-----

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Water resources make sure people get clean water in our homes and schools.
☐ a doctors ☐ b engineers ☐ c cleaners ☐ d officers
- Do they the newspaper every morning?
☐ a cook ☐ b read ☐ c eat ☐ d play
- My father takes of his plants every day.
☐ a plant ☐ b rest ☐ c fire ☐ d care
- The streets are because it rained heavily this morning.
☐ a dry ☐ b wet ☐ c dusty ☐ d hot
- I read a travel to learn about Al Galala City.
☐ a tickets ☐ b information ☐ c train ☐ d brochure
- Yes, we're tennis at the club today.
☐ a play ☐ b plays ☐ c playing ☐ d played
- Mona our uncle every weekend.
☐ a visits ☐ b visiting ☐ c visited ☐ d visit
- Can you posters around the park?
☐ a hang ☐ b hangs ☐ c hung ☐ d hanging
- You turn off the lights to save energy.
☐ a doesn't ☐ b isn't ☐ c must ☐ d shouldn't
- Hamdy at home yesterday?
☐ a Did ☐ b Does ☐ c Do ☐ d Must

4 Read and answer the questions: اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Mustafa. I am 23 years old. I am an engineer. My hobbies are listening to music and watching television. When I am free, I often listen to my favourite songs. At weekends, I usually go to music shops to buy good CDs. I always feel tired after a day's work. Listening to music helps me become relaxed and more comfortable before starting my work. I spend an hour after dinner watching news and programs.

Tests

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Mustafa ?

2. What are his hobbies?

3. Where does he go at weekends? Why?

B- Choose the correct answer:

4. Mustafa is a \ an

a officer

b engineer

c teacher

d doctor

5. Mustafa spends after dinner watching news and programs.

a one hour

b two hours

c four hours

d three hours

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملا:

1. has - hotels - **The city** - luxury.

2. is- the - of - the - story - **What** - moral?

3. my grandpa - for - care - the - **We** - plants - help.

4. visit - **We** - library - the - Friday - every.

5. the cactus - **The rose** - sorry - say - to - didn't.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥) جمل عن:

The High Dam

Guiding words

Aswan - across - flooding - electricity - lake

1 Read and complete the dialogue::

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

mechanic - help - community - fix - clean

Omar : Hi, Youssef! Hi, Salma!

Youssef : Hey, Omar! What are you doing?

Omar : I'm doing research about jobs that 1 ----- our community.

Salma : That sounds fun! Can we 2 ----- ?

Youssef : Great idea. I want to be a 3 ----- because mechanics 4 ----- vehicles, and I like fixing things.

Omar : That's cool! I want to be a water resources engineer.

Salma : What do water resources engineers do?

Omar : They make sure we get 5 ----- water in our homes and schools.

2 Read and circle the odd one out: اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1	paramedic	engineer	tailor	train	-----
2	cloud	high	empty	tall	-----
3	gold	community	granite	steel	-----
4	plan	car	bus	thirsty	-----
5	when	linen	which	why	-----

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Gases from cars and buses can ----- the air.
 a charge b pollute c support d create
- Ancient Egyptians carved huge statues from -----
 a linen b stones c papyrus d granite
- At 10:15, students have a short -----
 a class b break c walk d lesson
- What kinds of ----- does Grandpa grow in his garden?
 a planes b materials c herbs d jobs
- The cactus grows in the -----
 a sky b tree c book d desert

Tests

6. Basil and Nader go to work by car?

- a** Does **b** Are **c** Do **d** Were

7. Nada for her competition today.

- a** practiced **b** practices **c** practicing **d** is practicing

8. She is able with the traffic officer.

- a** speak **b** to speak **c** speaking **d** spoke

9. You throw rubbish in the Nile.

- a** mustn't **b** should **c** doesn't **d** must

10. We use to get energy from the sun.

- a** wind turbines **b** greenhouses **c** fridges **d** solar panels

4 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend, Omar and his friend were at the new science museum. They watched a show about space. Omar didn't understand some parts of it. His friend explained everything to him. They took photos of the rockets and stars. At the end, the guide asked if you enjoyed the show. Omar smiled and said, "Yes, it was amazing!"

A- Answer the following questions:

1. When were they at the new science museum?

.....

2. What did they watch there?

.....

3. Did they enjoy the show?

.....

B- Choose the correct answer:

4. didn't understand some parts of the show.

- a** Omar **b** the friend **c** the guide **d** the driver

5. They took photos of the and stars.

- a** views **b** clouds **c** buildings **d** rockets

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملا:

1. the - rubbish - throw - **Always** - in - bin.

.....

2. bottles - put - the recycling - and - paper - in - We - box.

3. friends - and - the - rose - became - The cactus.

4. ago - built - of years - pyramids - thousands - The ancient Egyptians.

5. energy - climate - change - Wasting - causes.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥) جمل عن:

Al Galala City

Guiding words

modern - luxury - beaches - mountain - University

Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع
الواردة في كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات

Unit 1 Lessons 3,4,5

My school day starts early. I wear my uniform and take the bus with my friends. First, we have Arabic and math lessons. At break time, I eat a sandwich and play football in the yard. After break, we study science and English. My favorite subject is art class because I love drawing. When the bell rings, I go home, do my homework, and rest. School is tiring but fun!

Test Unit 1

The Red Sea is home to amazing marine life. Sea turtles and dolphins swim near the coral reefs, which are full of color. This area is a protected area, so the water stays clean and safe. People love to snorkel or dive here to see the beauty under the sea. On land, you can relax on the beach or walk near mangrove trees. The peaceful sound of waves and the clear blue water make it a perfect place for visitors.

Test Unit 2

Egypt is famous for the River Nile. It's the longest river in the world. The ancient Egyptians built their temples near the river because they thought it was special.

The River Nile is important for people, plants, animals, and birds. It provides people with water and they can travel in boats and ships. Farmers can grow many crops by using the rich soil. We can see many birds like kingfishers and ducks come to the river to drink and find food. It's home for the Nile crocodiles, too.

Test Unit 3

We should try to solve them together. For example, wasting food is a big problem in our life. People and restaurants throw away their leftover food. They don't think about poor people, or the garbage that causes more pollution. So, we should solve this problem. We should plan meals, give our leftover food, to poor people and also store food properly.

Test Unit 4

Nabil is doing a research project about using energy wisely. He is writing about ways to save electricity at home. He gives us helpful tips, such as walking or biking, using the right size pots for cooking, and turning off lights and devices when not in use. He is drawing pictures of wasting energy. He suggests using energy from nature, like solar and wind, which are clean and don't pollute the air.

Test Unit 5

Last August my friends and I went on a school trip to the science museum. My friends and I watched a show about skeletons of dinosaurs. The show was amazing. We learnt about the kinds of dinosaurs. Mr. Khaled, our science teacher, explained the lesson in a better way. My friends took photos of many dinosaurs. We decided to go again because the museum uses modern technology like smart screens and wonderful shows.

General Tests

Test 1

My day starts early. I wake up around 6:30 a.m., get dressed, and have a quick breakfast - usually bread, cheese, and fruit. At 7:00, I leave the house. My dad drives me to school. School begins at 7:30. We start the day outside by singing in line, saluting the flag, and singing the national anthem. Then we go to our classrooms and begin our lessons. Our first subject is usually Arabic. I really enjoy it because we learn, and sometimes work in groups or pairs.

Test 2

In Alexandria, the wind is blowing, and light rain is falling. The waves are crashing on the beach, and the sky is full of clouds. People are staying indoors because it's cold and windy. Some streets are wet, and cars are moving slowly. Shops are closing early because not many people are going outside.

Test 3

In Cairo, the sun is shining and the weather is warm. People are walking in the streets, and children are playing in the parks. Some families are sitting in gardens, and trees are moving gently in the wind. I'm looking out the window now, and I can see birds flying in the sky. Some students are doing their homework outside because the weather is nice.

Test 4

In Aswan, it's much hotter. The temperature is rising quickly. The sky is clear, and the sun is very strong. Farmers are watering their plants early in the morning because the soil is becoming dry. People are drinking water and resting in the shade. Most people are wearing hats and sunglasses to protect themselves from the heat.

Test 5

It is a beautiful day in Cairo. Maged goes to Khan El Khalili with his family. It is very exciting! In the old streets, they can do many fun things. First, they buy souvenirs from the market. There are many nice things like bags, lamps, and bracelets. Maged's sister chooses a colorful necklace. Then, they walk through the streets and see people baking bread. It smells amazing! They also see shops where workers make furniture by hand. It is fun to watch them. Later, they take many photos in the old streets. There are beautiful doors and buildings with Arabic designs. Maged stands next to a big wooden gate and smiles for the camera.

Listening

Test 6

Hi! I'm Omar, and I'm doing a research project about man-made resources for my English class. I started by reading a book and searching the internet with my dad. I wrote facts in my notebook and printed pictures to help explain. Man-made resources are things people create using natural materials. For example, plastic is made from oil and used for bottles, toys, and school supplies.

Test 7

Last Thursday, our school organized a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum. Our class teacher, Miss Salma, and science teacher, Mr. Ahmed, came with us. I sat on the bus with my best friends Mariam and Omar. I packed my bag with snacks, water, a notebook, and my camera. The sky was clear, and the sun was shining. We left school early and rode the bus for two hours.

Test 8

Egypt is a sunny country, which makes it a great place for using solar energy. One important project is Benban Solar Park, near Aswan. It is one of the largest solar stations in the world. It was built between 2018 and 2019, and it has more than 6 million solar panels. Benban Solar Park gives electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories.

Test 9

Once upon a time in a dry desert, a beautiful rose grew. Her red petals sparkled in the sun, and she smelled

sweet. Every desert creature admired her, and she felt very proud. Beside her grew a rough cactus, covered in sharp thorns. The rose thought he was ugly and often made fun of him.

Test 10

The High Dam is a huge wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It holds a large lake called Lake Nasser. The dam stops the river from flooding and keeps water for people to use during the year. They built the High Dam to solve problems with flooding and drought. They also wanted to give people clean electricity and help farmers grow more crops with regular water.

Test 11

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist! He was born in Egypt in 1933 and always loved learning. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo before going to the United States to continue his amazing research. Dr. El-Sayed became a top expert in chemistry and nanoscience.

Test 12

Once upon a time, in a dry desert far away, there lived a beautiful rose. She had soft red petals that sparkled in the sunlight and gave off a sweet, lovely smell. Every creature in the desert admired her beauty, and the rose knew it. She was very proud of how she looked and believed she was the most special plant in the desert.